



# Think Julia: How to Think Like a Computer Scientist

Ben Lauwens

[ben.lauwens@gmail.com](mailto:ben.lauwens@gmail.com)

Allen Downey

[allendowney@gmail.com](mailto:allendowney@gmail.com)

## Table of Contents

Colophon

Preface

### 1. The Way of the Program

What is a Program?

Running Julia

The First Program

Arithmetic Operators

Values and Types

Formal and Natural Languages

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

### 2. Variables, Expressions and Statements

Assignment Statements

Variable Names

Expressions and Statements

Script Mode

Order of Operations

String Operations

Comments

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

### 3. Functions

Function Calls

Math Functions

Composition

Adding New Functions

Definitions and Uses

Flow of Execution

Parameters and Arguments

Variables and Parameters Are Local

Stack Diagrams

Fruitful Functions and Void Functions

Why Functions?

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

### 4. Case Study: Interface Design

Turtles

Simple Repetition

Exercises

Encapsulation

Generalization

- Interface Design
- Refactoring
- A Development Plan
- Docstring
- Debugging
- Glossary
- Exercises

## 5. Conditionals and Recursion

- Floor Division and Modulus
- Boolean Expressions
- Logical Operators
- Conditional Execution
- Alternative Execution
- Chained Conditionals
- Nested Conditionals
- Recursion
- Stack Diagrams for Recursive Functions
- Infinite Recursion
- Keyboard Input
- Debugging
- Glossary
- Exercises

## 6. Fruitful Functions

- Return Values
- Incremental Development
- Composition
- Boolean Functions
- More Recursion
- Leap of Faith
- One More Example
- Checking Types
- Debugging
- Glossary
- Exercises

## 7. Iteration

- Reassignment
- Updating Variables
- The `while` Statement
- `break`
- `continue`
- Square Roots
- Algorithms
- Debugging
- Glossary
- Exercises

## 8. Strings

Characters

A String Is a Sequence

length

Traversal

String Slices

Strings Are Immutable

String Interpolation

Searching

Looping and Counting

String Library

The `in` Operator

String Comparison

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

## 9. Case Study: Word Play

Reading Word Lists

Exercises

Search

Looping with Indices

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

## 10. Arrays

An Array is a Sequence

Arrays Are Mutable

Traversing an Array

Array Slices

Array Library

Map, Filter and Reduce

Dot Syntax

Deleting (Inserting) Elements

Arrays and Strings

Objects and Values

Aliasing

Array Arguments

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

## 11. Dictionaries

A Dictionary Is a Mapping

Dictionary as a Collection of Counters

Looping and Dictionaries

Reverse Lookup

Dictionaries and Arrays

Memos

Global Variables

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

## 12. Tuples

Tuples Are Immutable

Tuple Assignment

Tuples as Return Values

Variable-length Argument Tuples

Arrays and Tuples

Dictionaries and Tuples

Sequences of Sequences

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

## 13. Case Study: Data Structure Selection

Word Frequency Analysis

Random Numbers

Word Histogram

Most Common Words

Optional Parameters

Dictionary Subtraction

Random Words

Markov Analysis

Data Structures

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

## 14. Files

Persistence

Reading and Writing

Formatting

Filenames and Paths

Catching Exceptions

Databases

Serialization

Command Objects

Modules

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

## 15. Structs and Objects

Composite Types

Structs are Immutable

Mutable Structs

Rectangles

Instances as Return Values

Instances as Arguments

Copying

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

## 16. Structs and Functions

Time

Pure Functions

Modifiers

Prototyping Versus Planning

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

## 17. Multiple Dispatch

Type Declarations

Printing Objects

More Examples

Constructors

show

Operator Overloading

Multiple Dispatch

Polymorphism

Interface and Implementation

Debugging

Glossary

Exercises

## 18. Subtyping

Cards

Global Variables

Comparing Cards

Unit Testing

Decks

Add, Remove, Shuffle and Sort

Abstract Types and Subtyping

Abstract Types and Functions

Type Diagrams

Debugging

Data Encapsulation

Glossary

Exercises

## 19. The Goodies: Syntax

Blocks

Functions

Control Flow

Types

Methods

Constructors

Conversion and Promotion

Metaprogramming

Missing Values

Calling C and Fortran Code

Glossary

## 20. The Goodies: Base and Standard Library

Measuring Performance

Collections and Data Structures

Mathematics

Strings

Arrays

Interfaces

Interactive Utilities

Debugging

Glossary

## 21. Debugging

Syntax Errors

Runtime Errors

Semantic Errors

## Appendix A: Unicode Input

Index

## Colophon

Copyright © 2018 Allen Downey, Ben Lauwens. All rights reserved.

*Think Julia* is available under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 3.0 Unported License. The authors maintain an online version at <https://benlauwens.github.io/ThinkJulia.jl/latest/book.html>



Preface

# 1. The Way of the Program

The goal of this book is to teach you to think like a computer scientist. This way of thinking combines some of the best features of mathematics, engineering, and natural science. Like mathematicians, computer scientists use formal languages to denote ideas (specifically computations). Like engineers, they design things, assembling components into systems and evaluating tradeoffs among alternatives. Like scientists, they observe the behavior of complex systems, form hypotheses, and test predictions.

The single most important skill for a computer scientist is *problem solving*. Problem solving means the ability to formulate problems, think creatively about solutions, and express a solution clearly and accurately. As it turns out, the process of learning to program is an excellent opportunity to practice problem-solving skills. That's why this chapter is called, "The way of the program".

On one level, you will be learning to program, a useful skill by itself. On another level, you will use programming as a means to an end. As we go along, that end will become clearer.

## What is a Program?

A *program* is a sequence of instructions that specifies how to perform a computation. The computation might be something mathematical, such as solving a system of equations or finding the roots of a polynomial, but it can also be a symbolic computation, such as searching and replacing text in a document or something graphical, like processing an image or playing a video.

The details look different in different languages, but a few basic instructions appear in just about every language:

### **input**

Get data from the keyboard, a file, the network, or some other device.

### **output**

Display data on the screen, save it in a file, send it over the network, etc.

### **math**

Perform basic mathematical operations like addition and multiplication.

### **conditional execution**

Check for certain conditions and run the appropriate code.

### **repetition**

Perform some action repeatedly, usually with some variation.

Believe it or not, that's pretty much all there is to it. Every program you've ever used, no matter how complicated, is made up of instructions that look pretty much like these. So you can think of programming as the process of breaking a large, complex task into smaller and smaller subtasks until the subtasks are simple enough to be performed with one of these basic instructions.

## Running Julia

One of the challenges of getting started with Julia is that you might have to install Julia and related software on your computer. If you are familiar with your operating system, and especially if you are comfortable with the command-line interface, you will have no trouble installing Julia. But for beginners, it can be painful to learn about system administration and programming at the same time.

To avoid that problem, I recommend that you start out running Julia in a browser. Later, when you are comfortable with Julia, I'll make suggestions for installing Julia on your computer.

In the browser you can run Julia on JuliaBox: <https://www.juliabox.com>. No installation is required – just point your browser there, login and start computing.

The Julia *REPL* (Read–Eval–Print Loop) is a program that reads and executes Julia code. You might start the REPL by opening a terminal on JuliaBox and typing `julia` on the command line. When it starts, you should see output like this:

```
      _
     _(_) _
    ( )   | ( ) ( )
     _ _  | | _ _ _
    | | | | | | / _ ' |
    | | | | | | ( _ | |
    _/ | \ _ ' | | | \ _ ' |
    | _ /
Documentation: https://docs.julialang.org
Type "?" for help, "]"? for Pkg help.
Version 1.0.0 (2018-08-08)
Official https://julialang.org/ release

julia>
```

The first lines contain information about the REPL, so it might be different for you. But you should check that the version number is at least `0.7.0`.

The last line is a *prompt* that indicates that the REPL is ready for you to enter code. If you type a line of code and hit `ENTER`, the REPL displays the result:

```
julia> 1 + 1
2
```

JLCON

Now you're ready to get started. From here on, I assume that you know how to start the Julia REPL and run code.

## The First Program

Traditionally, the first program you write in a new language is called “Hello, World!” because all it does is display the words “Hello, World!”. In Julia, it looks like this:

```
julia> println("Hello, World!")
Hello, World!
```

JLCON

This is an example of a *print statement*, although it doesn't actually print anything on paper. It displays a result on the screen.

The quotation marks in the program mark the beginning and end of the text to be displayed; they don't appear in the result.

The parentheses indicate that `println` is a function. We'll get to functions in Functions.

## Arithmetic Operators

After “Hello, World!”, the next step is arithmetic. Julia provides *operators*, which are special symbols that represent computations like addition and multiplication.

The operators `+`, `-`, and `*` perform addition, subtraction, and multiplication, as in the following examples:

```
julia> 40 + 2
42
julia> 43 - 1
42
julia> 6 * 7
42
```

JLCON

The operator `/` performs division:

```
julia> 84 / 2
42.0
```

JLCON

You might wonder why the result is `42.0` instead of `42`. I'll explain in the next section.

Finally, the operator `^` performs exponentiation; that is, it raises a number to a power:

```
julia> 6^2 + 6
42
```

JLCON

## Values and Types

A *value* is one of the basic things a program works with, like a letter or a number. Some values we have seen so far are `2`, `42.0`, and `"Hello, World!"`.

These values belong to different *types*: `2` is an *integer*, `42.0` is a *floating-point number*, and `"Hello, World!"` is a *string*, so-called because the letters it contains are strung together.

If you are not sure what type a value has, the REPL can tell you:

```
julia> typeof(2)
Int64
julia> typeof(42.0)
Float64
julia> typeof("Hello, World!")
String
```

JLCON

Not surprisingly, integers belong to the type `Int64`, strings belong to `String` and floating-point numbers belong to `Float64`.

What about values like `"2"` and `"42.0"`? They look like numbers, but they are in quotation marks like strings.

```
julia> typeof("2")
String
julia> typeof("42.0")
String
```

JLCON

They're strings.

When you type a large integer, you might be tempted to use commas between groups of digits, as in `1,000,000`. This is not a legal *integer* in Julia, but it is legal:

```
julia> 1,000,000
(1, 0, 0)
```

JLCON

That's not what we expected at all! Julia parses `1,000,000` as a comma-separated sequence of integers. We'll learn more about this kind of sequence later.

## Formal and Natural Languages

*Natural languages* are the languages people speak, such as English, Spanish, and French. They were not designed by people (although people try to impose some order on them); they evolved naturally.

*Formal languages* are languages that are designed by people for specific applications. For example, the notation that mathematicians use is a formal language that is particularly good at denoting relationships among numbers and symbols. Chemists use a formal language to represent the chemical structure of molecules. And most importantly:

### NOTE

Programming languages are formal languages that have been designed to express computations.

Formal languages tend to have strict *syntax* rules that govern the structure of statements. For example, in mathematics the statement  $3 + 3 = 6$  has correct syntax, but  $3 + = 3\$6$  does not. In chemistry  $H_2O$  is a syntactically correct formula, but  ${}_2Zz$  is not.

Syntax rules come in two flavors, pertaining to *tokens* and *structure*. Tokens are the basic elements of the language, such as words, numbers, and chemical elements. One of the problems with  $3 + = 3\$6$  is that  $\$$  is not a legal token in mathematics (at least as far as I know). Similarly,  ${}_2Zz$  is not legal because there is no element with the abbreviation  $Zz$ .

The second type of syntax rule pertains to the way tokens are combined. The equation  $3 + = 3$  is illegal because even though  $+$  and  $=$  are legal tokens, you can't have one right after the other. Similarly, in a chemical formula the subscript comes after the element name, not before.

This is @ well-structured Engli\$h sentence with invalid t\*kens in it. This sentence all valid tokens has, but invalid structure with.

When you read a sentence in English or a statement in a formal language, you have to figure out the structure (although in a natural language you do this subconsciously). This process is called *parsing*.

Although formal and natural languages have many features in common—tokens, structure, and syntax—there are some differences:

## ambiguity

Natural languages are full of ambiguity, which people deal with by using contextual clues and other information. Formal languages are designed to be nearly or completely unambiguous, which means that any statement has exactly one meaning, regardless of context.

## redundancy

In order to make up for ambiguity and reduce misunderstandings, natural languages employ lots of redundancy. As a result, they are often verbose. Formal languages are less redundant and more concise.

## literalness

Natural languages are full of idiom and metaphor. If I say, “The penny dropped”, there is probably no penny and nothing dropping (this idiom means that someone understood something after a period of confusion). Formal languages mean exactly what they say.

Because we all grow up speaking natural languages, it is sometimes hard to adjust to formal languages. The difference between formal and natural language is like the difference between poetry and prose, but more so:

### Poetry

Words are used for their sounds as well as for their meaning, and the whole poem together creates an effect or emotional response. Ambiguity is not only common but often deliberate.

### Prose

The literal meaning of words is more important, and the structure contributes more meaning. Prose is more amenable to analysis than poetry but still often ambiguous.

### Programs

The meaning of a computer program is unambiguous and literal, and can be understood entirely by analysis of the tokens and structure.

#### WARNING

Formal languages are more dense than natural languages, so it takes longer to read them. Also, the structure is important, so it is not always best to read from top to bottom, left to right. Instead, learn to parse the program in your head, identifying the tokens and interpreting the structure. Finally, the details matter. Small errors in spelling and punctuation, which you can get away with in natural languages, can make a big difference in a formal language.

## Debugging

Programmers make mistakes. For whimsical reasons, programming errors are called *bugs* and the process of tracking them down is called *debugging*.

Programming, and especially debugging, sometimes brings out strong emotions. If you are struggling with a difficult bug, you might feel angry, despondent, or embarrassed.

There is evidence that people naturally respond to computers as if they were people. When they work well, we think of them as teammates, and when they are obstinate or rude, we respond to them the same way we respond to rude, obstinate people (Reeves and Nass, *The Media Equation: How People Treat Computers, Television, and New Media Like Real People and Places*).

Preparing for these reactions might help you deal with them. One approach is to think of the computer as an employee with certain strengths, like speed and precision, and particular weaknesses, like lack of empathy and inability to grasp the big picture.

Your job is to be a good manager: find ways to take advantage of the strengths and mitigate the weaknesses. And find ways to use your emotions to engage with the problem, without letting your reactions interfere with your ability to work effectively.

Learning to debug can be frustrating, but it is a valuable skill that is useful for many activities beyond programming. At the end of each chapter there is a section, like this one, with my suggestions for debugging. I hope they help!

## Glossary

### **problem solving**

The process of formulating a problem, finding a solution, and expressing it.

### **REPL**

A program that reads another program and executes it.

### **prompt**

Characters displayed by the REPL to indicate that it is ready to take input from the user.

### **program**

A sequence of instructions that specifies a computation.

### **print statement**

An instruction that causes the Julia REPL to display a value on the screen.

### **operator**

A special symbol that represents a simple computation like addition, multiplication, or string concatenation.

### **value**

One of the basic units of data, like a number or string, that a program manipulates.

### **type**

A category of values. The types we have seen so far are integers ( `Int64` ), floating-point numbers ( `Float64` ), and strings ( `String` ).

### **integer**

A type that represents whole numbers.

### **floating-point**

A type that represents numbers with fractional parts.

### **string**

A type that represents sequences of characters.

## **natural language**

Any one of the languages that people speak that evolved naturally.

## **formal language**

Any one of the languages that people have designed for specific purposes, such as representing mathematical ideas or computer programs; all programming languages are formal languages.

## **token**

One of the basic elements of the syntactic structure of a program, analogous to a word in a natural language.

## **structure**

The way tokens are combined.

## **syntax**

The rules that govern the structure of a program.

## **parse**

To examine a program and analyze the syntactic structure.

## **bug**

An error in a program.

## **debugging**

The process of finding and correcting bugs.

## Exercises

### **TIP**

It is a good idea to read this book in front of a computer so you can try out the examples as you go.

### Exercise 1-1

Whenever you are experimenting with a new feature, you should try to make mistakes. For example, in the “Hello, World!” program, what happens if you leave out one of the quotation marks? What if you leave out both? What if you spell `println` wrong?

This kind of experiment helps you remember what you read; it also helps when you are programming, because you get to know what the error messages mean. It is better to make mistakes now and on purpose than later and accidentally.

1. In a `print` statement, what happens if you leave out one of the parentheses, or both?
2. If you are trying to print a string, what happens if you leave out one of the quotation marks, or both?
3. You can use a minus sign to make a negative number like `-2`. What happens if you put a plus sign before a number? What about `2++2`?
4. In math notation, leading zeros are ok, as in `02`. What happens if you try this in Julia?
5. What happens if you have two values with no operator between them?



## Exercise 1-2

Start the Julia REPL and use it as a calculator.

1. How many seconds are there in 42 minutes 42 seconds?
2. How many miles are there in 10 kilometers? Hint: there are 1.61 kilometers in a mile.
3. If you run a 10 kilometer race in 42 minutes 42 seconds, what is your average pace (time per mile in minutes and seconds)? What is your average speed in miles per hour?

## 2. Variables, Expressions and Statements

One of the most powerful features of a programming language is the ability to manipulate *variables*. A variable is a name that refers to a value.

### Assignment Statements

An *assignment statement* creates a new variable and gives it a value:

```
julia> message = "And now for something completely different"
"And now for something completely different"
julia> n = 17
17
julia> π = 3.141592653589793
3.141592653589793
```

JLCON

This example makes three assignments. The first assigns a string to a new variable named `message`; the second gives the integer `17` to `n`; the third assigns the (approximate) value of  $\pi$  to `π` (`\pi` TAB).

A common way to represent variables on paper is to write the name with an arrow pointing to its value. This kind of figure is called a *state diagram* because it shows what state each of the variables is in (think of it as the variable's state of mind). State diagram shows the result of the previous example.

```
message → "And now for something completely different"
n → 17
π → 3.141592653589793
```

Figure 1. State diagram

### Variable Names

Programmers generally choose names for their variables that are meaningful—they document what the variable is used for.

Variable names can be as long as you like. They can contain almost all Unicode characters, but they can't begin with a number. It is legal to use uppercase letters, but it is conventional to use only lower case for variable names.

Unicode characters can be entered via tab completion of LaTeX-like abbreviations in the Julia REPL.

The underscore character, `_`, can appear in a name. It is often used in names with multiple words, such as `your_name` or `airspeed_of_unladen_swallow`.

If you give a variable an illegal name, you get a syntax error:

```
julia> 76trombones = "big parade"
ERROR: syntax: "76" is not a valid function argument name
julia> more@ = 1000000
ERROR: syntax: extra token "@" after end of expression
julia> struct = "Advanced Theoretical Zymurgy"
ERROR: syntax: unexpected "="
```

JLCON

`76trombones` is illegal because it begins with a number. `more@` is illegal because it contains an illegal character, `@`. But what's wrong with `struct`?

It turns out that `struct` is one of Julia's *keywords*. The REPL uses keywords to recognize the structure of the program, and they cannot be used as variable names.

Julia has these keywords:

<code>abstract type</code>	<code>baremodule</code>	<code>begin</code>	<code>break</code>	<code>catch</code>
<code>const</code>	<code>continue</code>	<code>do</code>	<code>else</code>	<code>elseif</code>
<code>end</code>	<code>export</code>	<code>finally</code>	<code>for</code>	<code>function</code>
<code>global</code>	<code>if</code>	<code>import</code>	<code>importall</code>	<code>let</code>
<code>local</code>	<code>macro</code>	<code>module</code>	<code>mutable struct</code>	<code>primitive type</code>
<code>quote</code>	<code>return</code>	<code>try</code>	<code>using</code>	<code>struct</code>
<code>while</code>				

You don't have to memorize this list. In most development environments, keywords are displayed in a different color; if you try to use one as a variable name, you'll know.

## Expressions and Statements

An *expression* is a combination of values, variables, and operators. A value all by itself is considered an expression, and so is a variable, so the following are all legal expressions:

```
julia> 42
42
julia> n
17
julia> n + 25
42
```

JLCON

When you type an expression at the prompt, the REPL *evaluates* it, which means that it finds the value of the expression. In this example, `n` has the value 17 and `n + 25` has the value 42.

A *statement* is a unit of code that has an effect, like creating a variable or displaying a value.

```
julia> n = 17
17
julia> println(n)
17
```

JLCON

The first line is an assignment statement that gives a value to `n`. The second line is a print statement that displays the value of `n`.

When you type a statement, the REPL *executes* it, which means that it does whatever the statement says. In general, statements don't have values.

## Script Mode

So far we have run Julia in *interactive mode*, which means that you interact directly with the REPL. Interactive mode is a good way to get started, but if you are working with more than a few lines of code, it can be clumsy.

The alternative is to save code in a file called a *script* and then run the REPL in *script mode* to execute the script. By convention, Julia scripts have names that end with *.jl*.

If you know how to create and run a script on your computer, you are ready to go. Otherwise I recommend using JuliaBox again. Open a text file, write the script and save with a *.jl* extension. The script can be executed in a terminal with the command `julia name_of_the_script.jl`.

Because Julia provides both modes, you can test bits of code in interactive mode before you put them in a script. But there are differences between interactive mode and script mode that can be confusing.

For example, if you are using Julia as a calculator, you might type

```
julia> miles = 26.2
26.2
julia> miles * 1.61
42.182
```

JLCON

The first line assigns a value to `miles` and displays the value. The second line is an expression, so the REPL evaluates it and displays the result. It turns out that a marathon is about 42 kilometers.

But if you type the same code into a script and run it, you get no output at all. In script mode an expression, all by itself, has no visible effect. Julia actually evaluates the expression, but it doesn't display the value unless you tell it to:

```
miles = 26.2
println(miles * 1.61)
```

JULIA

This behavior can be confusing at first.

A script usually contains a sequence of statements. If there is more than one statement, the results appear one at a time as the statements execute.

For example, the script

```
println(1)
x = 2
println(x)
```

JULIA

produces the output

```
1
2
```

The assignment statement produces no output.

To check your understanding, type the following statements in the Julia REPL and see what they do:

#### TIP

```
5
x = 5
x + 1
```

JULIA

Now put the same statements in a script and run it. What is the output? Modify the script by transforming each expression into a print statement and then run it again.

## Order of Operations

When an expression contains more than one operator, the order of evaluation depends on the *order of operations*. For mathematical operators, Julia follows mathematical convention. The acronym *PEMDAS* is a useful way to remember the rules:

- Parentheses have the highest precedence and can be used to force an expression to evaluate in the order you want. Since expressions in parentheses are evaluated first,  $2*(3-1)$  is 4, and  $(1+1)^(5-2)$  is 8. You can also use parentheses to make an expression easier to read, as in  $(\text{minute} * 100) / 60$ , even if it doesn't change the result.
- Exponentiation has the next highest precedence, so  $1+2^3$  is 9, not 27, and  $2*3^2$  is 18, not 36.
- Multiplication and Division have higher precedence than Addition and Subtraction. So  $2*3-1$  is 5, not 4, and  $6+4/2$  is 8, not 5.
- Operators with the same precedence are evaluated from left to right (except exponentiation). So in the expression  $\text{degrees} / 2 * \pi$ , the division happens first and the result is multiplied by  $\pi$ . To divide by  $2\pi$ , you can use parentheses or write  $\text{degrees} / 2 / \pi$ .

#### NOTE

I don't work very hard to remember the precedence of operators. If I can't tell by looking at the expression, I use parentheses to make it obvious.

## String Operations

In general, you can't perform mathematical operations on strings, even if the strings look like numbers, so the following are illegal:

```
"2" - "1"    "eggs" / "easy"    "third" + "a charm"
```

JULIA

But there are two exceptions, `*` and `^`.

The `*` operator performs *string concatenation*, which means it joins the strings by linking them end-to-end. For example:

```
julia> first = "throat"
"throat"
julia> second = "warbler"
"warbler"
julia> first * second
"throatwarbler"
```

JLCON

The `^` operator also works on strings; it performs repetition. For example, `"Spam"^3` is `"SpamSpamSpam"`. If one of the values is a string, the other has to be an integer.

This use of `*` and `^` makes sense by analogy with multiplication and exponentiation. Just as `4^3` is equivalent to `4*4*4`, we expect `"Spam"^3` to be the same as `"Spam"*"Spam"*"Spam"`, and it is.

## Comments

As programs get bigger and more complicated, they get more difficult to read. Formal languages are dense, and it is often difficult to look at a piece of code and figure out what it is doing, or why.

For this reason, it is a good idea to add notes to your programs to explain in natural language what the program is doing. These notes are called *comments*, and they start with the `#` symbol:

```
# compute the percentage of the hour that has elapsed
percentage = (minute * 100) / 60
```

JULIA

In this case, the comment appears on a line by itself. You can also put comments at the end of a line:

```
percentage = (minute * 100) / 60 # percentage of an hour
```

JULIA

Everything from the `#` to the end of the line is ignored—it has no effect on the execution of the program.

Comments are most useful when they document non-obvious features of the code. It is reasonable to assume that the reader can figure out *what* the code does; it is more useful to explain *why*.

This comment is redundant with the code and useless:

```
v = 5 # assign 5 to v
```

JULIA

This comment contains useful information that is not in the code:

```
v = 5 # velocity in meters/second.
```

JULIA

### WARNING

Good variable names can reduce the need for comments, but long names can make complex expressions hard to read, so there is a tradeoff.

## Debugging

Three kinds of errors can occur in a program: syntax errors, runtime errors, and semantic errors. It is useful to distinguish between them in order to track them down more quickly.

### Syntax error

“Syntax” refers to the structure of a program and the rules about that structure. For example, parentheses have to come in matching pairs, so `(1 + 2)` is legal, but `8)` is a syntax error.

If there is a syntax error anywhere in your program, Julia displays an error message and quits, and you will not be able to run the program. During the first few weeks of your programming career, you might spend a lot of time tracking down syntax errors. As you gain experience, you will make fewer errors and find them faster.

### **Runtime error**

The second type of error is a runtime error, so called because the error does not appear until after the program has started running. These errors are also called *exceptions* because they usually indicate that something exceptional (and bad) has happened.

Runtime errors are rare in the simple programs you will see in the first few chapters, so it might be a while before you encounter one.

### **Semantic error**

The third type of error is “semantic”, which means related to meaning. If there is a semantic error in your program, it will run without generating error messages, but it will not do the right thing. It will do something else. Specifically, it will do what you told it to do.

Identifying semantic errors can be tricky because it requires you to work backward by looking at the output of the program and trying to figure out what it is doing.

## Glossary

### **variable**

A name that refers to a value.

### **assignment**

A statement that assigns a value to a variable

### **state diagram**

A graphical representation of a set of variables and the values they refer to.

### **keyword**

A reserved word that is used to parse a program; you cannot use keywords like `if`, `function`, and `while` as variable names.

### **operand**

One of the values on which an operator operates.

### **expression**

A combination of variables, operators, and values that represents a single result.

### **evaluate**

To simplify an expression by performing the operations in order to yield a single value.

### **statement**

A section of code that represents a command or action. So far, the statements we have seen are assignments and print statements.

**execute**

To run a statement and do what it says.

**interactive mode**

A way of using the Julia REPL by typing code at the prompt.

**script mode**

A way of using the Julia REPL to read code from a script and run it.

**script**

A program stored in a file.

**order of operations**

Rules governing the order in which expressions involving multiple operators and operands are evaluated.

**concatenate**

To join two operands end-to-end.

**comment**

Information in a program that is meant for other programmers (or anyone reading the source code) and has no effect on the execution of the program.

**syntax error**

An error in a program that makes it impossible to parse (and therefore impossible to interpret).

**runtime error or exception**

An error that is detected while the program is running.

**semantics**

The meaning of a program.

**semantic error**

An error in a program that makes it do something other than what the programmer intended.

## Exercises

### Exercise 2-1

Repeating my advice from the previous chapter, whenever you learn a new feature, you should try it out in interactive mode and make errors on purpose to see what goes wrong.

1. We've seen that `n = 42` is legal. What about `42 = n`?
2. How about `x = y = 1`?
3. In some languages every statement ends with a semi-colon, `;`. What happens if you put a semi-colon at the end of a Julia statement?
4. What if you put a period at the end of a statement?



5. In math notation you can multiply  $x$  and  $y$  like this:  $x \cdot y$ . What happens if you try that in Julia?

## Exercise 2-2

Practice using the Julia REPL as a calculator:

1. The volume of a sphere with radius  $r$  is  $\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ . What is the volume of a sphere with radius 5?
2. Suppose the cover price of a book is \$ 24.95, but bookstores get a 40 % discount. Shipping costs \$ 3 for the first copy and 75 cents for each additional copy. What is the total wholesale cost for 60 copies?
3. If I leave my house at 6:52 am and run 1 mile at an easy pace (8:15 per mile), then 3 miles at tempo (7:12 per mile) and 1 mile at easy pace again, what time do I get home for breakfast?

## 3. Functions

In the context of programming, a *function* is a named sequence of statements that performs a computation. When you define a function, you specify the name and the sequence of statements. Later, you can “call” the function by name.

### Function Calls

We have already seen one example of a function call:

```
julia> typeof(42)
Int64
```

JLCON

The name of the function is `typeof`. The expression in parentheses is called the *argument* of the function. The result, for this function, is the type of the argument.

It is common to say that a function “takes” an argument and “returns” a result. The result is also called the *return value*.

Julia provides functions that convert values from one type to another. The `parse` function takes a string and converts it to any number type, if it can, or complains otherwise:

```
julia> parse{Int64, "32"}
32
julia> parse{Float64, "3.14159"}
3.14159
julia> parse{Int64, "Hello"}
ERROR: ArgumentError: invalid base 10 digit 'H' in "Hello"
```

JLCON

`trunc` can convert floating-point values to integers, but it doesn’t round off; it chops off the fraction part:

```
julia> trunc{Int64, 3.99999}
3
julia> trunc{Int64, -2.3}
-2
```

JLCON

`float` converts integers to floating-point numbers:

```
julia> float(32)
32.0
```

JLCON

Finally, `string` converts its argument to a string:

```
julia> string(32)
"32"
julia> string(3.14159)
"3.14159"
```

JLCON

### Math Functions

In Julia, most of the familiar mathematical functions are directly available:

```
ratio = signal_power / noise_power
decibels = 10 * log10(ratio)
```

JULIA

The first example uses `log10` to compute a signal-to-noise ratio in decibels (assuming that `signal_power` and `noise_power` are defined). `log`, which computes logarithms in base  $e$ , is also provided.

```
radians = 0.7
height = sin(radians)
```

JULIA

The second example finds the sine of radians. The name of the variable is a hint that `sin` and the other trigonometric functions (`cos`, `tan`, etc.) take arguments in radians. To convert from degrees to radians, divide by 180 and multiply by  $\pi$ :

```
julia> degrees = 45
45
julia> radians = degrees / 180 *  $\pi$ 
0.7853981633974483
julia> sin(radians)
0.7071067811865475
```

JLCON

The value of the variable  `$\pi$`  is a floating-point approximation of  $\pi$ , accurate to about 21 digits.

If you know trigonometry, you can check the previous result by comparing it to the square root of two divided by two:

```
julia> sqrt(2) / 2
0.7071067811865476
```

JLCON

## Composition

So far, we have looked at the elements of a program—variables, expressions, and statements—in isolation, without talking about how to combine them.

One of the most useful features of programming languages is their ability to take small building blocks and compose them. For example, the argument of a function can be any kind of expression, including arithmetic operators:

```
x = sin(degrees / 360 * 2 *  $\pi$ )
```

JULIA

And even function calls:

```
x = exp(log(x+1))
```

JULIA

Almost anywhere you can put a value, you can put an arbitrary expression, with one exception: the left side of an assignment statement has to be a variable name. Any other expression on the left side is a syntax error (we will see exceptions to this rule later).

```
julia> minutes = hours * 60 # right
120
julia> hours * 60 = minutes # wrong!
ERROR: syntax: "60" is not a valid function argument name
```

JLCON

## Adding New Functions

So far, we have only been using the functions that come with Julia, but it is also possible to add new functions. A *function definition* specifies the name of a new function and the sequence of statements that run when the function is called. Here is an example:

```
function printlyrics()
    println("I'm a lumberjack, and I'm okay.")
    println("I sleep all night and I work all day.")
end
```

JULIA

`function` is a keyword that indicates that this is a function definition. The name of the function is `printlyrics`. The rules for function names are the same as for variable names: they can contain almost all Unicode characters, but the first character can't be a number. You can't use a keyword as the name of a function, and you should avoid having a variable and a function with the same name.

The empty parentheses after the name indicate that this function doesn't take any arguments.

The first line of the function definition is called the *header*; the rest is called the *body*. The body is terminated with the keyword `end` and it can contain any number of statements. For readability the body of the function can be indented. So just do it.

The quotation marks must be “straight quotes”, usually located next to Enter on the keyboard. “Curly quotes”, like the ones in this sentence, are not legal in Julia.

If you type a function definition in interactive mode, the REPL indents to let you know that the definition isn't complete:

```
julia> function printlyrics()
    println("I'm a lumberjack, and I'm okay.")
```

JLCON

To end the function, you have to enter `end`.

Defining a function creates a *function object*, which is of type `Function`:

```
julia> printlyrics isa Function
true
```

JLCON

The syntax for calling the new function is the same as for built-in functions:

```
julia> printlyrics()
I'm a lumberjack, and I'm okay.
I sleep all night and I work all day.
```

JLCON

Once you have defined a function, you can use it inside another function. For example, to repeat the previous refrain, we could write a function called `repeatlyrics`:

```
function repeatlyrics()
    printlyrics()
    printlyrics()
end
```

And then call `repeatlyrics`:

```
julia> repeatlyrics()
I'm a lumberjack, and I'm okay.
I sleep all night and I work all day.
I'm a lumberjack, and I'm okay.
I sleep all night and I work all day.
```

But that's not really how the song goes.

## Definitions and Uses

Pulling together the code fragments from the previous section, the whole program looks like this:

```
function printlyrics()
    println("I'm a lumberjack, and I'm okay.")
    println("I sleep all night and I work all day.")
end

function repeatlyrics()
    printlyrics()
    printlyrics()
end

repeatlyrics()
```

This program contains two function definitions: `printlyrics` and `repeatlyrics`. Function definitions get executed just like other statements, but the effect is to create function objects. The statements inside the function do not run until the function is called, and the function definition generates no output.

As you might expect, you have to create a function before you can run it. In other words, the function definition has to run before the function gets called.

### TIP

As an exercise, move the last line of this program to the top, so the function call appears before the definitions. Run the program and see what error message you get.

Now move the function call back to the bottom and move the definition of `printlyrics` after the definition of `repeatlyrics`. What happens when you run this program?

## Flow of Execution

To ensure that a function is defined before its first use, you have to know the order statements run in, which is called the *flow of execution*.

Execution always begins at the first statement of the program. Statements are run one at a time, in order from top to bottom.

Function definitions do not alter the flow of execution of the program, but remember that statements inside the function don't run until the function is called.

A function call is like a detour in the flow of execution. Instead of going to the next statement, the flow jumps to the body of the function, runs the statements there, and then comes back to pick up where it left off.

That sounds simple enough, until you remember that one function can call another. While in the middle of one function, the program might have to run the statements in another function. Then, while running that new function, the program might have to run yet another function!

Fortunately, Julia is good at keeping track of where it is, so each time a function completes, the program picks up where it left off in the function that called it. When it gets to the end of the program, it terminates.

#### NOTE

In summary, when you read a program, you don't always want to read from top to bottom. Sometimes it makes more sense if you follow the flow of execution.

## Parameters and Arguments

Some of the functions we have seen require arguments. For example, when you call `sin` you pass a number as an argument. Some functions take more than one argument: `parse` takes two, a number type and a string.

Inside the function, the arguments are assigned to variables called *parameters*. Here is a definition for a function that takes an argument:

```
function printtwice(brace)
    println(brace)
    println(brace)
end
```

JULIA

This function assigns the argument to a parameter named `brace`. When the function is called, it prints the value of the parameter (whatever it is) twice.

This function works with any value that can be printed.

```
julia> printtwice("Spam")
Spam
Spam
julia> printtwice(42)
42
42
julia> printtwice(π)
π = 3.1415926535897...
π = 3.1415926535897...
```

JLCON

The same rules of composition that apply to built-in functions also apply to programmer-defined functions, so we can use any kind of expression as an argument for `printtwice`:

```
julia> printtwice("Spam "^4)
Spam Spam Spam Spam
Spam Spam Spam Spam
```

JLCON

The argument is evaluated before the function is called, so in the examples the expressions `"Spam "^4` and `cos( $\pi$ )` are only evaluated once.

You can also use a variable as an argument:

```
julia> michael = "Eric, the half a bee."
"Eric, the half a bee."
julia> printtwice(michael)
Eric, the half a bee.
Eric, the half a bee.
```

JLCON

The name of the variable we pass as an argument (`michael`) has nothing to do with the name of the parameter (`bruce`). It doesn't matter what the value was called back home (in the caller); here in `printtwice`, we call everybody `bruce`.

## Variables and Parameters Are Local

When you create a variable inside a function, it is *local*, which means that it only exists inside the function. For example:

```
function cattwice(part1, part2)
    concat = part1 * part2
    printtwice(concat)
end
```

JULIA

This function takes two arguments, concatenates them, and prints the result twice. Here is an example that uses it:

```
julia> line1 = "Bing tiddle "
"Bing tiddle "
julia> line2 = "tiddle bang."
"tiddle bang."
julia> cattwice(line1, line2)
Bing tiddle tiddle bang.
Bing tiddle tiddle bang.
```

JLCON

When `cattwice` terminates, the variable `concat` is destroyed. If we try to print it, we get an exception:

```
julia> println(concat)
ERROR: UndefVarError: concat not defined
```

JLCON

Parameters are also local. For example, outside `printtwice`, there is no such thing as `bruce`.

## Stack Diagrams

To keep track of which variables can be used where, it is sometimes useful to draw a *stack diagram*. Like state diagrams, stack diagrams show the value of each variable, but they also show the function each variable belongs to.

Each function is represented by a *frame*. A frame is a box with the name of a function beside it and the parameters and variables of the function inside it. The stack diagram for the previous example is shown in Stack diagram.

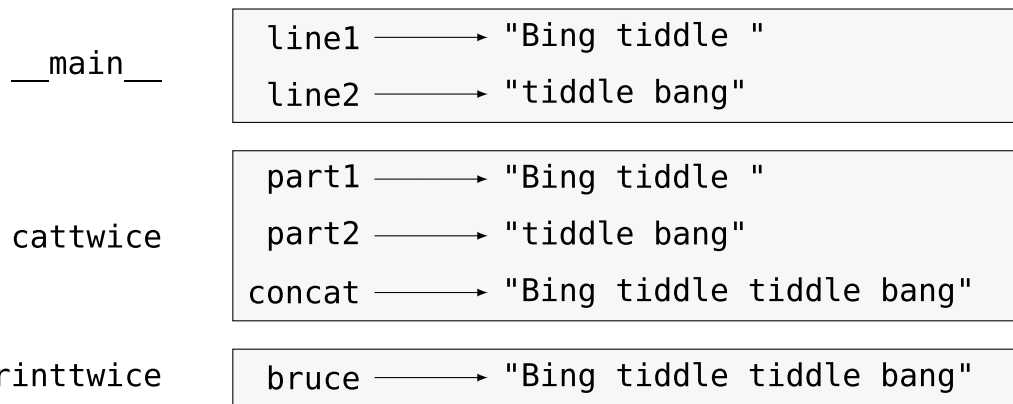


Figure 2. Stack diagram

The frames are arranged in a stack that indicates which function called which, and so on. In this example, `printtwice` was called by `cattwice`, and `cattwice` was called by `__main__`, which is a special name for the topmost frame. When you create a variable outside of any function, it belongs to `__main__`.

Each parameter refers to the same value as its corresponding argument. So, `part1` has the same value as `line1`, `part2` has the same value as `line2`, and `bruce` has the same value as `concat`.

If an error occurs during a function call, Julia prints the name of the function, the name of the function that called it, and the name of the function that called *that*, all the way back to `__main__`.

For example, if you try to access `concat` from within `printtwice`, you get a `UndefVarError`:

```
ERROR: UndefVarError: concat not defined
Stacktrace:
 [1] printtwice at ./REPL[1]:2 [inlined]
 [2] cattwice(::String, ::String) at ./REPL[2]:3
```

This list of functions is called a *stacktrace*. It tells you what program file the error occurred in, and what line, and what functions were executing at the time. It also shows the line of code that caused the error.

The order of the functions in the stacktrace is the inverse of the order of the frames in the stack diagram. The function that is currently running is at the top.

## Fruitful Functions and Void Functions

Some of the functions we have used, such as the math functions, return results; for lack of a better name, I call them *fruitful functions*. Other functions, like `printtwice`, perform an action but don't return a value. They are called *void functions*.

When you call a fruitful function, you almost always want to do something with the result; for example, you might assign it to a variable or use it as part of an expression:

```
x = cos(radians)
golden = (sqrt(5) + 1) / 2
```

JULIA

When you call a function in interactive mode, Julia displays the result:



```
julia> sqrt(5)
2.23606797749979
```

JLCON

But in a script, if you call a fruitful function all by itself, the return value is lost forever!

```
sqrt(5)
```

JULIA

Output:

```
2.23606797749979
```

This script computes the square root of 5, but since it doesn't store or display the result, it is not very useful.

Void functions might display something on the screen or have some other effect, but they don't have a return value. If you assign the result to a variable, you get a special value called `nothing`.

```
julia> result = printtwice("Bing")
Bing
Bing
julia> show(result)
nothing
```

JLCON

To print the value `nothing`, you have to use the function `show` which is like `print` but can handle the value `nothing`.

The value `nothing` is not the same as the string `"nothing"`. It is a special value that has its own type:

```
julia> typeof(nothing)
Nothing
```

JLCON

The functions we have written so far are all void. We will start writing fruitful functions in a few chapters.

## Why Functions?

It may not be clear why it is worth the trouble to divide a program into functions. There are several reasons:

- Creating a new function gives you an opportunity to name a group of statements, which makes your program easier to read and debug.
- Functions can make a program smaller by eliminating repetitive code. Later, if you make a change, you only have to make it in one place.
- Dividing a long program into functions allows you to debug the parts one at a time and then assemble them into a working whole.
- Well-designed functions are often useful for many programs. Once you write and debug one, you can reuse it.

## Debugging

One of the most important skills you will acquire is debugging. Although it can be frustrating, debugging is one of the most intellectually rich, challenging, and interesting parts of programming.

In some ways debugging is like detective work. You are confronted with clues and you have to infer the processes and events that led to the results you see.

Debugging is also like an experimental science. Once you have an idea about what is going wrong, you modify your program and try again. If your hypothesis was correct, you can predict the result of the modification, and you take a step closer to a working program. If your hypothesis was wrong, you have to come up with a new one. As Sherlock Holmes pointed out, “When you have eliminated the impossible, whatever remains, however improbable, must be the truth.” (A. Conan Doyle, *The Sign of Four*)

For some people, programming and debugging are the same thing. That is, programming is the process of gradually debugging a program until it does what you want. The idea is that you should start with a working program and make small modifications, debugging them as you go.

For example, Linux is an operating system that contains millions of lines of code, but it started out as a simple program Linus Torvalds used to explore the Intel 80386 chip. According to Larry Greenfield, “One of Linus’s earlier projects was a program that would switch between printing “AAAA and “BBBB”. This later evolved to Linux.” (*The Linux Users’ Guide Beta Version 1*).

## Glossary

### **function**

A named sequence of statements that performs some useful operation. Functions may or may not take arguments and may or may not produce a result.

### **function definition**

A statement that creates a new function, specifying its name, parameters, and the statements it contains.

### **function object**

A value created by a function definition. The name of the function is a variable that refers to a function object.

### **header**

The first line of a function definition.

### **body**

The sequence of statements inside a function definition.

### **parameter**

A name used inside a function to refer to the value passed as an argument.

### **function call**

A statement that runs a function. It consists of the function name followed by an argument list in parentheses.

### **argument**

A value provided to a function when the function is called. This value is assigned to the corresponding parameter in the function.

### **local variable**

A variable defined inside a function. A local variable can only be used inside its function.

## return value

The result of a function. If a function call is used as an expression, the return value is the value of the expression.

## fruitful function

A function that returns a value.

## void function

A function that always returns `nothing`.

### `nothing`

A special value returned by void functions.

## composition

Using an expression as part of a larger expression, or a statement as part of a larger statement.

## flow of execution

The order statements run in.

## stack diagram

A graphical representation of a stack of functions, their variables, and the values they refer to.

## frame

A box in a stack diagram that represents a function call. It contains the local variables and parameters of the function.

## stacktrace

A list of the functions that are executing, printed when an exception occurs.

## Exercises

### NOTE

These exercises should be done using only the statements and other features we have learned so far.

### Exercise 3-1

Write a function named `rightjustify` that takes a string named `s` as a parameter and prints the string with enough leading spaces so that the last letter of the string is in column 70 of the display.

```
julia> rightjustify("monty")
```

JLCON

monty

### TIP

Use string concatenation and repetition. Also, Julia provides a built-in function called `length` that returns the length of a string, so the value of `length("monty")` is 5.

### Exercise 3-2

A function object is a value you can assign to a variable or pass as an argument. For example, `dotwice` is a function that takes a function object as an argument and calls it twice:

```
function dotwice(f)
    f()
    f()
end
```

Here's an example that uses `dotwice` to call a function named `printspam` twice.

```
function printspam()
    println("spam")
end

dotwice(printspam)
```

1. Type this example into a script and test it.
2. Modify `dotwice` so that it takes two arguments, a function object and a value, and calls the function twice, passing the value as an argument.
3. Copy the definition of `printtwice` from earlier in this chapter to your script.
4. Use the modified version of `dotwice` to call `printtwice` twice, passing `"spam"` as an argument.
5. Define a new function called `dofour` that takes a function object and a value and calls the function four times, passing the value as a parameter. There should be only two statements in the body of this function, not four.

### Exercise 3-3

1. Write a function `printgrid` that draws a grid like the following: (`function`, `programmer-defined`, `printgrid`, `see="printgrid"`)

```
julia> printgrid()
+ - - - - + - - - - +
|           |           |
|           |           |
|           |           |
+ - - - - + - - - - +
|           |           |
|           |           |
|           |           |
+ - - - - + - - - - +
```

2. Write a function that draws a similar grid with four rows and four columns.

Credit: This exercise is based on an exercise in Oualline, *Practical C Programming*, Third Edition, O'Reilly Media, 1997.

To print more than one value on a line, you can print a comma-separated sequence of values:

```
println("+", "-")
```

JULIA

#### TIP

The function `print` does not advance to the next line:

```
print("+ ")  
println("-")
```

JULIA

The output of these statements is `"+ -"` on the same line. The output from the next `print` statement would begin on the next line.

## 4. Case Study: Interface Design

This chapter presents a case study that demonstrates a process for designing functions that work together.

The examples in this chapter can be executed in a graphical notebook on JuliaBox, which combines code, formatted text, math, and multimedia in a single document.

### Turtles

A *module* is a file that contains a collection of related functions. Julia provides some modules in its Standard Library. Additional functionality can be added from a growing collection of *packages* (<https://juliaobserver.com>).

Packages can be installed in the REPL by entering the Pkg REPL-mode using the key `]`.

```
(v0.7) pkg> add ThinkJulia
```

JLCON

This can take some time.

Before we can use the functions in a module, we have to import it with an `using` statement:

```
julia> using ThinkJulia

julia> ? = Turtle()
Luxor.Turtle(0.0, 0.0, true, 0.0, (0.0, 0.0, 0.0))
```

JLCON

The `ThinkJulia` module provides a function called `Turtle` that creates a `Luxor.Turtle` object, which we assign to a variable named `? (\:turtle: TAB)`.

Once you create a turtle, you can call a function to move it around a drawing. For example, to move the turtle forward:

```
@svg begin
    forward(?, 100)
end
```

JULIA

---

*Figure 3. Moving the turtle forward*

The `@svg` keyword starts a macro that draws a svg picture. Macros are an important but advanced feature of Julia.

The arguments of `forward` are the turtle and a distance in pixels, so the actual size depends on your display.

Another function you can call with a turtle as argument is `turn` for turning. The second argument for `turn` is an angle in degrees.

Also, each turtle is holding a pen, which is either down or up; if the pen is down, the turtle leaves a trail when it moves. Moving the turtle forward shows the trail left behind by the turtle. The functions `penup` and `pendown` stand for “pen up” and “pen down”.

To draw a right angle, modify the macro:

```
? = Turtle()
@svg begin
    forward(?, 100)
    turn(?, -90)
    forward(?, 100)
end
```

**TIP**

Now modify the macro to draw a square. Don't go on until you've got it working!

## Simple Repetition

Chances are you wrote something like this:

```
? = Turtle()
@svg begin
    forward(?, 100)
    turn(?, -90)
    forward(?, 100)
    turn(?, -90)
    forward(?, 100)
    turn(?, -90)
    forward(?, 100)
end
```

We can do the same thing more concisely with a `for` statement:

```
julia> for i in 1:4
    println("Hello!")
end
Hello!
Hello!
Hello!
Hello!
```

This is the simplest use of the `for` statement; we will see more later. But that should be enough to let you rewrite your square-drawing program. Don't go on until you do.

Here is a `for` statement that draws a square:

```
? = Turtle()
@svg begin
    for i in 1:4
        forward(?, 100)
        turn(?, -90)
    end
end
```

The syntax of a `for` statement is similar to a function definition. It has a header and a body that ends with the keyword `end`. The body can contain any number of statements.

A `for` statement is also called a *loop* because the flow of execution runs through the body and then loops back to the top. In this case, it runs the body four times.

This version is actually a little different from the previous square-drawing code because it makes another turn after drawing the last side of the square. The extra turn takes more time, but it simplifies the code if we do the same thing every time through the loop. This version also has the effect of leaving the turtle back in the starting position, facing in the starting direction.

#### NOTE

When a function returns and its arguments are in the same state as before the function calls, we call this function *pure*. Pure functions are easier to reason about and allow some compiler optimizations.

## Exercises

The following is a series of exercises using turtles. They are meant to be fun, but they have a point, too. While you are working on them, think about what the point is.

#### NOTE

The following sections have solutions to the exercises, so don't look until you have finished (or at least tried).

### Exercise 4-1

Write a function called `square` that takes a parameter named `t`, which is a turtle. It should use the turtle to draw a square.

### Exercise 4-2

Write a function call that passes `t` as an argument to `square`, and then run the macro again.

### Exercise 4-3

Add another parameter, named `len`, to `square`. Modify the body so length of the sides is `len`, and then modify the function call to provide a second argument. Run the macro again. Test with a range of values for `len`.

### Exercise 4-4

Make a copy of `square` and change the name to `polygon`. Add another parameter named `n` and modify the body so it draws an  $n$ -sided regular polygon.

#### TIP

The exterior angles of an  $n$ -sided regular polygon are  $\frac{360}{n}$  degrees.

### Exercise 4-5

Write a function called `circle` that takes a turtle, `t`, and radius, `r`, as parameters and that draws an approximate circle by calling `polygon` with an appropriate length and number of sides. Test your function with a range of values of `r`.

#### TIP

Figure out the circumference of the circle and make sure that `len * n == circumference`.

### Exercise 4-6

Make a more general version of `circle` called `arc` that takes an additional parameter `angle`, which determines what fraction of a circle to draw. `angle` is in units of degrees, so when `angle = 360`, `arc` should draw a complete circle.



## Encapsulation

The first exercise asks you to put your square-drawing code into a function definition and then call the function, passing the turtle as a parameter. Here is a solution:

```
function square(t)
  for i in 1:4
    forward(t, 100)
    turn(t, -90)
  end
end
? = Turtle()
@svg begin
  square(?)
end
```

JULIA

The innermost statements, `forward` and `turn` are indented twice to show that they are inside the `for` loop, which is inside the function definition.

Inside the function, `t` refers to the same turtle `?`, so `turn(t, -90)` has the same effect as `turn(?, -90)`. In that case, why not call the parameter `?`? The idea is that `t` can be any turtle, not just `?`, so you could create a second turtle and pass it as an argument to `square`:

```
? = Turtle()
@svg begin
  square(?)
end
```

JULIA

Wrapping a piece of code up in a function is called *encapsulation*. One of the benefits of encapsulation is that it attaches a name to the code, which serves as a kind of documentation. Another advantage is that if you re-use the code, it is more concise to call a function twice than to copy and paste the body!

## Generalization

The next step is to add a `len` parameter to `square`. Here is a solution:

```
function square(t, len)
  for i in 1:4
    forward(t, len)
    turn(t, -90)
  end
end
? = Turtle()
@svg begin
  square(?, 100)
end
```

JULIA

Adding a parameter to a function is called *generalization* because it makes the function more general: in the previous version, the square is always the same size; in this version it can be any size.

The next step is also a generalization. Instead of drawing squares, `polygon` draws regular polygons with any number of sides. Here is a solution:

```

function polygon(t, n, len)
    angle = 360 / n
    for i in 1:n
        forward(t, len)
        turn(t, -angle)
    end
end
? = Turtle()
@svg begin
    polygon(?, 7, 70)
end

```

This example draws a 7-sided polygon with side length 70.

## Interface Design

The next step is to write `circle`, which takes a radius, `r`, as a parameter. Here is a simple solution that uses `polygon` to draw a 50-sided polygon:

```

function circle(t, r)
    circumference = 2 * π * r
    n = 50
    len = circumference / n
    polygon(t, n, len)
end

```

The first line computes the circumference of a circle with radius  $r$  using the formula  $2\pi r$ . `n` is the number of line segments in our approximation of a circle, so `len` is the length of each segment. Thus, `polygon` draws a 50-sided polygon that approximates a circle with radius `r`.

One limitation of this solution is that `n` is a constant, which means that for very big circles, the line segments are too long, and for small circles, we waste time drawing very small segments. One solution would be to generalize the function by taking `n` as a parameter. This would give the user (whoever calls `circle`) more control, but the interface would be less clean.

The *interface* of a function is a summary of how it is used: what are the parameters? What does the function do? And what is the return value? An interface is “clean” if it allows the caller to do what they want without dealing with unnecessary details.

In this example, `r` belongs in the interface because it specifies the circle to be drawn. `n` is less appropriate because it pertains to the details of how the circle should be rendered.

Rather than clutter up the interface, it is better to choose an appropriate value of `n` depending on `circumference`:

```

function circle(t, r)
    circumference = 2 * π * r
    n = trunc(circumference / 3) + 3
    len = circumference / n
    polygon(t, n, len)
end

```

Now the number of segments is an integer near `circumference/3`, so the length of each segment is approximately 3, which is small enough that the circles look good, but big enough to be efficient, and acceptable for any size circle.

Adding 3 to `n` guarantees that the polygon has at least 3 sides.

## Refactoring

When I wrote `circle`, I was able to re-use `polygon` because a many-sided polygon is a good approximation of a circle. But `arc` is not as cooperative; we can't use `polygon` or `circle` to draw an arc.

One alternative is to start with a copy of `polygon` and transform it into `arc`. The result might look like this:

```
function arc(t, r, angle)
    arc_len = 2 * π * r * angle / 360
    n = trunc(arc_len / 3) + 1
    step_len = arc_len / n
    step_angle = angle / n
    for i in 1:n
        forward(t, step_len)
        turn(t, -step_angle)
    end
end
```

JULIA

The second half of this function looks like `polygon`, but we can't re-use `polygon` without changing the interface. We could generalize `polygon` to take an `angle` as a third argument, but then `polygon` would no longer be an appropriate name! Instead, let's call the more general function `polyline`:

```
function polyline(t, n, len, angle)
    for i in 1:n
        forward(t, len)
        turn(t, -angle)
    end
end
```

JULIA

Now we can rewrite `polygon` and `arc` to use `polyline`:

```
function polygon(t, n, len)
    angle = 360 / n
    polyline(t, n, len, angle)
end

function arc(t, r, angle)
    arc_len = 2 * π * r * angle / 360
    n = trunc(arc_len / 3) + 1
    step_len = arc_len / n
    step_angle = angle / n
    polyline(t, n, step_len, step_angle)
end
```

JULIA

Finally, we can rewrite `circle` to use `arc`:

```
function circle(t, r)
    arc(t, r, 360)
end
```

This process—rearranging a program to improve interfaces and facilitate code re-use—is called *refactoring*. In this case, we noticed that there was similar code in `arc` and `polygon`, so we “factored it out” into `polyline`.

If we had planned ahead, we might have written `polyline` first and avoided refactoring, but often you don’t know enough at the beginning of a project to design all the interfaces. Once you start coding, you understand the problem better. Sometimes refactoring is a sign that you have learned something.

## A Development Plan

A *development plan* is a process for writing programs. The process we used in this case study is “encapsulation and generalization”. The steps of this process are:

1. Start by writing a small program with no function definitions.
2. Once you get the program working, identify a coherent piece of it, encapsulate the piece in a function and give it a name.
3. Generalize the function by adding appropriate parameters.
4. Repeat steps 1–3 until you have a set of working functions. Copy and paste working code to avoid retyping (and re-debugging).
5. Look for opportunities to improve the program by refactoring. For example, if you have similar code in several places, consider factoring it into an appropriately general function.

### NOTE

This process has some drawbacks—we will see alternatives later—but it can be useful if you don’t know ahead of time how to divide the program into functions. This approach lets you design as you go along.

## Docstring

A *docstring* is a string before a function that explains the interface (“doc” is short for “documentation”). Here is an example:

```
"""
polyline(t, n, len, angle)

Draws n line segments with the given length and
angle (in degrees) between them. t is a turtle.
"""
function polyline(t, n, len, angle)
    for i in 1:n
        forward(t, len)
        turn(t, -angle)
    end
end
```

Documentation can be accessed in the REPL or in a notebook by typing `?` followed by the name of a function or macro, and pressing `ENTER`:

```
help?> polyline
search:

polyline(t, n, len, angle)

Draws n line segments with the given length and angle (in degrees) between them. t is a turtle.
```

By convention, all docstrings are triple-quoted strings, also known as multiline strings because the triple quotes allow the string to span more than one line.

It is terse, but it contains the essential information someone would need to use this function. It explains concisely what the function does (without getting into the details of how it does it). It explains what effect each parameter has on the behavior of the function and what type each parameter should be (if it is not obvious).

#### NOTE

Writing this kind of documentation is an important part of interface design. A well-designed interface should be simple to explain; if you have a hard time explaining one of your functions, maybe the interface could be improved.

## Debugging

An interface is like a contract between a function and a caller. The caller agrees to provide certain parameters and the function agrees to do certain work.

For example, `polyline` requires four arguments: `t` has to be a turtle; `n` has to be an integer; `len` should be a positive number; and `angle` has to be a number, which is understood to be in degrees.

These requirements are called *preconditions* because they are supposed to be true before the function starts executing. Conversely, conditions at the end of the function are *postconditions*. Postconditions include the intended effect of the function (like drawing line segments) and any side effects (like moving the turtle or making other changes).

Preconditions are the responsibility of the caller. If the caller violates a (properly documented!) precondition and the function doesn't work correctly, the bug is in the caller, not the function.

If the preconditions are satisfied and the postconditions are not, the bug is in the function. If your pre- and postconditions are clear, they can help with debugging.

## Glossary

### module

A file that contains a collection of related functions and other definitions.

### package

An external library with additional functionality.

### using statement

A statement that reads a module file and creates a module object.

### loop

A part of a program that can run repeatedly.

**pure function**

Function without side effects.

**encapsulation**

The process of transforming a sequence of statements into a function definition.

**generalization**

The process of replacing something unnecessarily specific (like a number) with something appropriately general (like a variable or parameter).

**interface**

A description of how to use a function, including the name and descriptions of the arguments and return value.

**refactoring**

The process of modifying a working program to improve function interfaces and other qualities of the code.

**development plan**

A process for writing programs.

**docstring**

A string that appears at the top of a function definition to document the function's interface.

**precondition**

A requirement that should be satisfied by the caller before a function starts.

**postcondition**

A requirement that should be satisfied by the function before it ends.

## Exercises

### Exercise 4-7

Enter the code in this chapter in a notebook.

1. Draw a stack diagram that shows the state of the program while executing `circle(?, radius)`. You can do the arithmetic by hand or add print statements to the code.
2. The version of `arc` in Refactoring is not very accurate because the linear approximation of the circle is always outside the true circle. As a result, the turtle ends up a few pixels away from the correct destination. My solution shows a way to reduce the effect of this error. Read the code and see if it makes sense to you. If you draw a diagram, you might see how it works.

```

"""
arc(t, r, angle)

Draws an arc with the given radius and angle:

    t: turtle
    r: radius
    angle: angle subtended by the arc, in degrees
"""
function arc(t, r, angle)
    arc_len = 2 * π * r * abs(angle) / 360
    n = trunc(arc_len / 4) + 3
    step_len = arc_len / n
    step_angle = angle / n

    # making a slight left turn before starting reduces
    # the error caused by the linear approximation of the arc
    turn(t, step_angle/2)
    polyline(t, n, step_len, step_angle)
    turn(t, -step_angle/2)
end

```

### Exercise 4-8

Write an appropriately general set of functions that can draw flowers as in Turtle flowers.

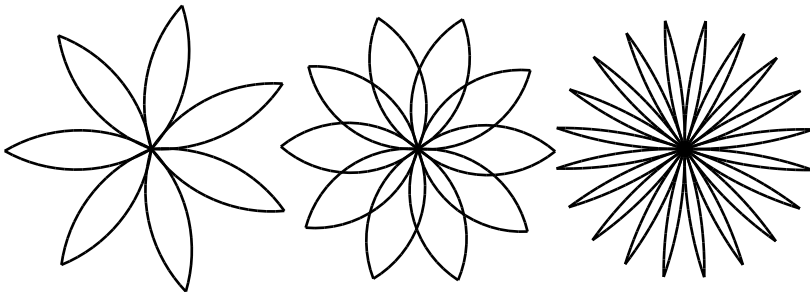


Figure 4. Turtle flowers

### Exercise 4-9

Write an appropriately general set of functions that can draw shapes as in Turtle pies.

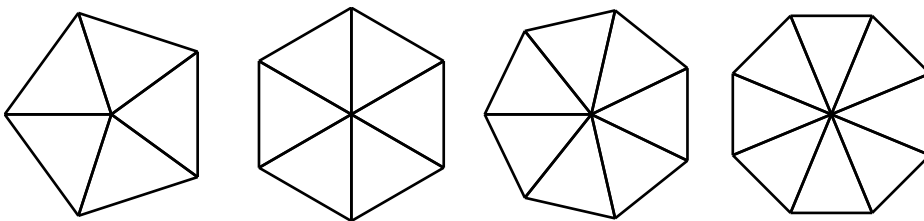


Figure 5. Turtle pies

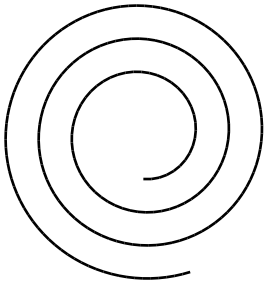
### Exercise 4-10

The letters of the alphabet can be constructed from a moderate number of basic elements, like vertical and horizontal lines and a few curves. Design an alphabet that can be drawn with a minimal number of basic elements and then write functions that draw the letters.

You should write one function for each letter, with names `draw_a`, `draw_b`, etc., and put your functions in a file named `letters.jl`.

#### Exercise 4-11

Read about spirals at <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spiral>; then write a program that draws an Archimedian spiral as in Archimedian spiral.



*Figure 6. Archimedian spiral*



## 5. Conditionals and Recursion

The main topic of this chapter is the `if` statement, which executes different code depending on the state of the program. But first I want to introduce two new operators: floor division and modulus.

### Floor Division and Modulus

The *floor division* operator, `÷` (`\div` TAB), divides two numbers and rounds down to an integer. For example, suppose the run time of a movie is 105 minutes. You might want to know how long that is in hours. Conventional division returns a floating-point number:

```
julia> minutes = 105
105
julia> minutes / 60
1.75
```

JLCON

But we don't normally write hours with decimal points. Floor division returns the integer number of hours, rounding down:

```
julia> hours = minutes ÷ 60
1
```

JLCON

To get the remainder, you could subtract off one hour in minutes:

```
julia> remainder = minutes - hours * 60
45
```

JLCON

An alternative is to use the *modulus operator*, `%`, which divides two numbers and returns the remainder.

```
julia> remainder = minutes % 60
45
```

JLCON

#### NOTE

The modulus operator is more useful than it seems. For example, you can check whether one number is divisible by another—if `x % y` is zero, then `x` is divisible by `y`.

Also, you can extract the right-most digit or digits from a number. For example, `x % 10` yields the right-most digit of `x` (in base 10). Similarly `x % 100` yields the last two digits.

### Boolean Expressions

A *boolean expression* is an expression that is either true or false. The following examples use the operator `==`, which compares two operands and produces `true` if they are equal and `false` otherwise:

```
julia> 5 == 5
true
julia> 5 == 6
false
```

JLCON

`true` and `false` are special values that belong to the type `Bool` ; they are not strings:

```
julia> typeof(true)
Bool
julia> typeof(false)
Bool
```

JLCON

The `==` operator is one of the relational operators; the others are:

```
x != y      # x is not equal to y
x ≠ y      # (\ne TAB)
x > y      # x is greater than y
x < y      # x is less than y
x >= y     # x is greater than or equal to y
x ≥ y     # (\ge TAB)
x <= y     # x is less than or equal to y
x ≤ y     # (\le TAB)
```

JULIA

#### WARNING

Although these operations are probably familiar to you, the Julia symbols are different from the mathematical symbols. A common error is to use a single equal sign (`=`) instead of a double equal sign (`==`). Remember that `=` is an assignment operator and `==` is a relational operator. There is no such thing as `=<` or `=>`.

## Logical Operators

There are three *logical operators*: `&&` (and), `||` (or), and `!` (not). The semantics (meaning) of these operators is similar to their meaning in English. For example, `x > 0 && x < 10` is true only if `x` is greater than `0` *and* less than `10`.

`n % 2 == 0 || n % 3 == 0` is true if *either or both* of the conditions is true, that is, if the number is divisible by 2 *or* 3.

Both `&&` and `||` associate to the right, but `&&` has higher precedence than `||` does.

Finally, the `!` operator negates a boolean expression, so `!(x > y)` is true if `x > y` is false, that is, if `x` is less than or equal to `y`.

## Conditional Execution

In order to write useful programs, we almost always need the ability to check conditions and change the behavior of the program accordingly. *Conditional statements* give us this ability. The simplest form is the `if` statement:

```
if x > 0
    println("x is positive")
end
```

JULIA

The boolean expression after `if` is called the *condition*. If it is true, the indented statement runs. If not, nothing happens.

`if` statements have the same structure as function definitions: a header followed by body terminated with the keyword `end`. Statements like this are called *compound statements*.

There is no limit on the number of statements that can appear in the body. Occasionally, it is useful to have a body with no statements (usually as a place keeper for code you haven't written yet).

```
if x < 0
    # TODO: need to handle negative values!
end
```

JULIA

## Alternative Execution

A second form of the `if` statement is “alternative execution”, in which there are two possibilities and the condition determines which one runs. The syntax looks like this:

```
if x % 2 == 0
    println("x is even")
else
    println("x is odd")
end
```

JULIA

If the remainder when `x` is divided by 2 is 0, then we know that `x` is even, and the program displays an appropriate message. If the condition is false, the second set of statements runs. Since the condition must be true or false, exactly one of the alternatives will run. The alternatives are called *branches*, because they are branches in the flow of execution.

## Chained Conditionals

Sometimes there are more than two possibilities and we need more than two branches. One way to express a computation like that is a *chained conditional*:

```
if x < y
    println("x is less than y")
elseif x > y
    println("x is greater than y")
else
    println("x and y are equal")
end
```

JULIA

Again, exactly one branch will run. There is no limit on the number of `elseif` statements. If there is an `else` clause, it has to be at the end, but there doesn't have to be one.

```
if choice == "a"
    draw_a()
elseif choice == "b"
    draw_b()
elseif choice == "c"
    draw_c()
end
```

JULIA

Each condition is checked in order. If the first is false, the next is checked, and so on. If one of them is true, the corresponding branch runs and the statement ends. Even if more than one condition is true, only the first true branch runs.

## Nested Conditionals

One conditional can also be nested within another. We could have written the example in the previous section like this:

```
if x == y
    println("x and y are equal")
else
    if x < y
        println("x is less than y")
    else
        println("x is greater than y")
    end
end
```

JULIA

The outer conditional contains two branches. The first branch contains a simple statement. The second branch contains another `if` statement, which has two branches of its own. Those two branches are both simple statements, although they could have been conditional statements as well.

Although the non-compulsory indentation of the statements makes the structure apparent, *nested conditionals* become difficult to read very quickly. It is a good idea to avoid them when you can. (((indentation)))

Logical operators often provide a way to simplify nested conditional statements. For example, we can rewrite the following code using a single conditional:

```
if 0 < x
    if x < 10
        println("x is a positive single-digit number.")
    end
end
```

JULIA

The `println` statement runs only if we make it past both conditionals, so we can get the same effect with the `&&` operator:

```
if 0 < x && x < 10
    println("x is a positive single-digit number.")
end
```

JULIA

For this kind of condition, Julia provides a more concise option:

```
if 0 < x < 10
    println("x is a positive single-digit number.")
end
```

JULIA

## Recursion

It is legal for one function to call another; it is also legal for a function to call itself. It may not be obvious why that is a good thing, but it turns out to be one of the most magical things a program can do. For example, look at the following function:

```
function countdown(n)
    if n ≤ 0
        println("Blastoff!")
    else
        print(n, " ")
        countdown(n-1)
    end
end
```

If `n` is 0 or negative, it outputs the word, "Blastoff!" Otherwise, it outputs `n` and then calls a function named `countdown`—itself—passing `n-1` as an argument.

What happens if we call this function like this?

```
julia> countdown(3)
3 2 1 Blastoff!
```

1. The execution of `countdown` begins with `n = 3`, and since `n` is greater than 0, it outputs the value 3, and then calls itself...
  - a. The execution of `countdown` begins with `n = 2`, and since `n` is greater than 0, it outputs the value 2, and then calls itself...
    - i. The execution of `countdown` begins with `n = 1`, and since `n` is greater than 0, it outputs the value 1, and then calls itself...
      - A. The execution of `countdown` begins with `n = 0`, and since `n` is not greater than 0, it outputs the word, "Blastoff!" and then returns.
        - ii. The countdown that got `n = 1` returns.
    - b. The countdown that got `n = 2` returns.
  2. The countdown that got `n = 3` returns.

And then you're back in `__main__`.

A function that calls itself is *recursive*; the process of executing it is called *recursion*.

As another example, we can write a function that prints a string `n` times.

```
function printn(s, n)
    if n ≤ 0
        return
    end
    println(s)
    printn(s, n-1)
end
```

If `n ≤ 0` the `return` statement exits the function. The flow of execution immediately returns to the caller, and the remaining lines of the function don't run.

The rest of the function is similar to `countdown`: it displays `s` and then calls itself to display `s` `n - 1` additional times. So the number of lines of output is  $1 + (n - 1)$ , which adds up to `n`.

For simple examples like this, it is probably easier to use a `for` loop. But we will see examples later that are hard to write with a `for` loop and easy to write with recursion, so it is good to start early.

## Stack Diagrams for Recursive Functions

In Stack Diagrams, we used a stack diagram to represent the state of a program during a function call. The same kind of diagram can help interpret a recursive function.

Every time a function gets called, Julia creates a frame to contain the function's local variables and parameters. For a recursive function, there might be more than one frame on the stack at the same time.

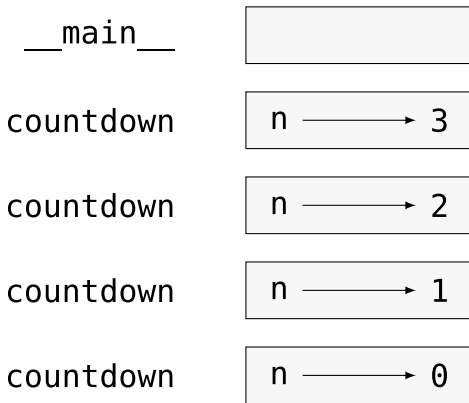


Figure 7. Stack diagram

Stack diagram shows a stack diagram for `countdown` called with `n = 3`.

As usual, the top of the stack is the frame for `__main__`. It is empty because we did not create any variables in `__main__` or pass any arguments to it.

The four `countdown` frames have different values for the parameter `n`. The bottom of the stack, where `n = 0`, is called the *base case*. It does not make a recursive call, so there are no more frames.

### TIP

As an exercise, draw a stack diagram for `println` called with `s = "Hello"` and `n = 2`. Then write a function called `do_n` that takes a function object and a number, `n`, as arguments, and that calls the given function `n` times.

## Infinite Recursion

If a recursion never reaches a base case, it goes on making recursive calls forever, and the program never terminates. This is known as *infinite recursion*, and it is generally not a good idea. Here is a minimal program with an infinite recursion:

```
function recurse()  
    recurse()  
end
```

JULIA

In most programming environments, a program with infinite recursion does not really run forever. Julia reports an error message when the maximum recursion depth is reached:

```
julia> recurse()
ERROR: StackOverflowError:
Stacktrace:
 [1] recurse() at ./REPL[1]:2 (repeats 80000 times)
```

This stacktrace is a little bigger than the one we saw in the previous chapter. When the error occurs, there are 80000 `recurse` frames on the stack!

If you encounter an infinite recursion by accident, review your function to confirm that there is a base case that does not make a recursive call. And if there is a base case, check whether you are guaranteed to reach it.

## Keyboard Input

The programs we have written so far accept no input from the user. They just do the same thing every time.

Julia provides a built-in function called `readline` that stops the program and waits for the user to type something. When the user presses `RETURN` or `ENTER`, the program resumes and `readline` returns what the user typed as a string.

```
julia> text = readline()
What are you waiting for?
"What are you waiting for?"
```

Before getting input from the user, it is a good idea to print a prompt telling the user what to type:

```
julia> print("What...is your name? "); readline()
What...is your name? Arthur, King of the Britons!
"Arthur, King of the Britons!"
```

A semi-colon `;` allows to put multiple statements on the same line. In the REPL only the last statement returns its value.

If you expect the user to type an integer, you can try to convert the return value to `Int64`:

```
julia> println("What...is the airspeed velocity of an unladen swallow?"); speed = readline()
What...is the airspeed velocity of an unladen swallow?
42
"42"
julia> parse{Int64, speed}
42
```

But if the user types something other than a string of digits, you get an error:

```
julia> println("What...is the airspeed velocity of an unladen swallow? "); speed = readline()
What...is the airspeed velocity of an unladen swallow?
What do you mean, an African or a European swallow?
"What do you mean, an African or a European swallow?"
julia> parse{Int64, speed}
ERROR: ArgumentError: invalid base 10 digit 'W' in "What do you mean, an African or a European swallow?"
[...]
```

We will see how to handle this kind of error later.

## Debugging

When a syntax or runtime error occurs, the error message contains a lot of information, but it can be overwhelming. The most useful parts are usually:

- What kind of error it was, and
- Where it occurred.

Syntax errors are usually easy to find, but there are a few gotchas. In general, error messages indicate where the problem was discovered, but the actual error might be earlier in the code, sometimes on a previous line.

The same is true of runtime errors. Suppose you are trying to compute a signal-to-noise ratio in decibels. The formula is

$$SNR_{\text{db}} = 10 \log_{10} \frac{P_{\text{signal}}}{P_{\text{noise}}}.$$

In Julia, you might write something like this:

```
signal_power = 9
noise_power = 10
ratio = signal_power ÷ noise_power
decibels = 10 * log10(ratio)
print(decibels)
```

JULIA

And you get:

```
-Inf
```

JULIA

This is not the result you expected.

To find the error, it might be useful to print the value of `ratio`, which turns out to be 0. The problem is in line 3, which uses floor division instead of floating-point division.

### WARNING

You should take the time to read error messages carefully, but don't assume that everything they say is correct.

## Glossary

### floor division

An operator, denoted `÷`, that divides two numbers and rounds down (toward negative infinity) to an integer.

### modulus operator

An operator, denoted with a percent sign (`%`), that works on integers and returns the remainder when one number is divided by another.

### boolean expression

An expression whose value is either `true` or `false`.



## relational operator

One of the operators that compares its operands: `==`, `≠` (`!=`), `>`, `<`, `≥` (`>=`), and `≤` (`<=`).

## logical operator

One of the operators that combines boolean expressions: `&&` (and), `||` (or), and `!` (not).

## conditional statement

A statement that controls the flow of execution depending on some condition.

## condition

The boolean expression in a conditional statement that determines which branch runs.

## compound statement

A statement that consists of a header and a body. The body is terminated with the keyword `end`.

## branch

One of the alternative sequences of statements in a conditional statement.

## chained conditional

A conditional statement with a series of alternative branches.

## nested conditional

A conditional statement that appears in one of the branches of another conditional statement.

## return statement

A statement that causes a function to end immediately and return to the caller.

## recursion

The process of calling the function that is currently executing.

## base case

A conditional branch in a recursive function that does not make a recursive call.

## infinite recursion

A recursion that doesn't have a base case, or never reaches it. Eventually, an infinite recursion causes a runtime error.

## Exercises

### Exercise 5-1

The function `time` returns the current Greenwich Mean Time in “the epoch”, which is an arbitrary time used as a reference point. On UNIX systems, the epoch is 1 January 1970.

```
julia> time()  
1.536693351511752e9
```

JLCON

Write a script that reads the current time and converts it to a time of day in hours, minutes, and seconds, plus the number of days since the epoch.

## Exercise 5-2

Fermat's Last Theorem says that there are no positive integers  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  such that

$$a^n + b^n = c^n$$

for any values of  $n$  greater than 2.

1. Write a function named `checkfermat` that takes four parameters—`a`, `b`, `c` and `n`—and checks to see if Fermat's theorem holds. If `n` is greater than 2 and `a^n + b^n == c^n` the program should print, "Holy smokes, Fermat was wrong!" Otherwise the program should print, "No, that doesn't work."
2. Write a function that prompts the user to input values for `a`, `b`, `c` and `n`, converts them to integers, and uses `checkfermat` to check whether they violate Fermat's theorem.

## Exercise 5-3

If you are given three sticks, you may or may not be able to arrange them in a triangle. For example, if one of the sticks is 12 inches long and the other two are one inch long, you will not be able to get the short sticks to meet in the middle. For any three lengths, there is a simple test to see if it is possible to form a triangle:

### TIP

If any of the three lengths is greater than the sum of the other two, then you cannot form a triangle. Otherwise, you can. (If the sum of two lengths equals the third, they form what is called a "degenerate" triangle.)

1. Write a function named `istriangle` that takes three integers as arguments, and that prints either "Yes" or "No", depending on whether you can or cannot form a triangle from sticks with the given lengths.
2. Write a function that prompts the user to input three stick lengths, converts them to integers, and uses `istriangle` to check whether sticks with the given lengths can form a triangle.

## Exercise 5-4

What is the output of the following program? Draw a stack diagram that shows the state of the program when it prints the result.

```
function recurse(n, s)
    if n == 0
        println(s)
    else
        recurse(n-1, n+s)
    end
end

recurse(3, 0)
```

JULIA

1. What would happen if you called this function like this: `recurse(-1, 0)`?
2. Write a docstring that explains everything someone would need to know in order to use this function (and nothing else).

The following exercises use the `ThinkJulia` module, described in Case Study: Interface Design:

### Exercise 5-5

Read the following function and see if you can figure out what it does (see the examples in Case Study: Interface Design). Then run it and see if you got it right.

```
function draw(t, length, n)
    if n == 0
        return
    end
    angle = 50
    forward(t, length*n)
    turn(t, -angle)
    draw(t, length, n-1)
    turn(t, 2*angle)
    draw(t, length, n-1)
    turn(t, -angle)
    forward(-length*n)
end
```

JULIA

### Exercise 5-6

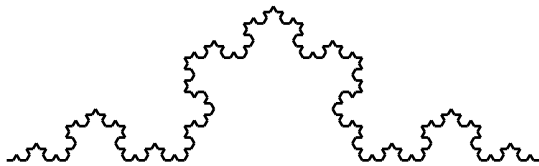


Figure 8. A Koch curve

The Koch curve is a fractal that looks something like A Koch curve. To draw a Koch curve with length  $x$ , all you have to do is

1. Draw a Koch curve with length  $\frac{x}{3}$ .
2. Turn left 60 degrees.
3. Draw a Koch curve with length  $\frac{x}{3}$ .
4. Turn right 120 degrees.
5. Draw a Koch curve with length  $\frac{x}{3}$ .
6. Turn left 60 degrees.
7. Draw a Koch curve with length  $\frac{x}{3}$ .

The exception is if  $x$  is less than 3: in that case, you can just draw a straight line with length  $x$ .

1. Write a function called `koch` that takes a turtle and a length as parameters, and that uses the turtle to draw a Koch curve with the given length.
2. Write a function called `snowflake` that draws three Koch curves to make the outline of a snowflake.
3. The Koch curve can be generalized in several ways. See [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Koch\\_snowflake](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Koch_snowflake) for examples and implement your favorite.

## 6. Fruitful Functions

Many of the Julia functions we have used, such as the math functions, produce return values. But the functions we've written are all void: they have an effect, like printing a value or moving a turtle, but they return `nothing`. In this chapter you will learn to write fruitful functions.

### Return Values

Calling the function generates a return value, which we usually assign to a variable or use as part of an expression.

```
e = exp(1.0)
height = radius * sin(radians)
```

JULIA

The functions we have written so far are void. Speaking casually, they have no return value; more precisely, their return value is `nothing`. In this chapter, we are (finally) going to write fruitful functions. The first example is `area`, which returns the area of a circle with the given radius:

```
function area(radius)
    a = π * radius^2
    return a
end
```

JULIA

We have seen the `return` statement before, but in a fruitful function the `return` statement includes an expression. This statement means: “Return immediately from this function and use the following expression as a return value.” The expression can be arbitrarily complicated, so we could have written this function more concisely:

```
function area(radius)
    π * radius^2
end
```

JULIA

The value returned by a function is the value of the last expression evaluated, which, by default, is the last expression in the body of the function definition.

On the other hand, *temporary variables* like `a` and explicit `return` statements can make debugging easier.

Sometimes it is useful to have multiple `return` statements, one in each branch of a conditional:

```
function absvalue(x)
    if x < 0
        return -x
    else
        return x
    end
end
```

JULIA

Since these return statements are in an alternative conditional, only one runs.

As soon as a `return` statement runs, the function terminates without executing any subsequent statements. Code that appears after a `return` statement, or any other place the flow of execution can never reach, is called *dead code*.

In a fruitful function, it is a good idea to ensure that every possible path through the program hits a return statement. For example:

```
function absvalue(x)
    if x < 0
        return -x
    end
    if x > 0
        return x
    end
end
```

JULIA

This function is incorrect because if `x` happens to be 0, neither condition is true, and the function ends without hitting a `return` statement. If the flow of execution gets to the end of a function, the return value is `nothing`, which is not the absolute value of 0.

```
julia> show(absvalue(0))
nothing
```

JLCON

#### NOTE

By the way, Julia provides a built-in function called `abs` that computes absolute values.

#### TIP

As an exercise, write a `compare` function that takes two values, `x` and `y`, and returns `1` if `x > y`, `0` if `x == y`, and `-1` if `x < y`.

## Incremental Development

As you write larger functions, you might find yourself spending more time debugging.

To deal with increasingly complex programs, you might want to try a process called *incremental development*. The goal of incremental development is to avoid long debugging sessions by adding and testing only a small amount of code at a time.

As an example, suppose you want to find the distance between two points, given by the coordinates  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$ . By the Pythagorean theorem, the distance is:

$$d = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$$

The first step is to consider what a distance function should look like in Julia. In other words, what are the inputs (parameters) and what is the output (return value)?

In this case, the inputs are two points, which you can represent using four numbers. The return value is the distance represented by a floating-point value.

Immediately you can write an outline of the function:

```
function distance(x1, y1, x2, y2)
    0.0
end
```

JULIA

Obviously, this version doesn't compute distances; it always returns zero. But it is syntactically correct, and it runs, which means that you can test it before you make it more complicated. The subscript numbers are available in the Unicode character encoding ( `\_1` TAB , `\_2` TAB , etc.).

To test the new function, call it with sample arguments:

```
distance(1, 2, 4, 6)
```

JLCON

I chose these values so that the horizontal distance is 3 and the vertical distance is 4; that way, the result is 5, the hypotenuse of a 3-4-5 triangle. When testing a function, it is useful to know the right answer.

At this point we have confirmed that the function is syntactically correct, and we can start adding code to the body. A reasonable next step is to find the differences  $x_2 - x_1$  and  $y_2 - y_1$ . The next version stores those values in temporary variables and prints them.

```
function distance(x1, y1, x2, y2)
    dx = x2 - x1
    dy = y2 - y1
    println("dx is ", dx)
    println("dy is ", dy)
    0.0
end
```

JULIA

If the function is working, it should display `dx` is 3 and `dy` is 4. If so, we know that the function is getting the right arguments and performing the first computation correctly. If not, there are only a few lines to check.

Next we compute the sum of squares of `dx` and `dy`:

```
function distance(x1, y1, x2, y2)
    dx = x2 - x1
    dy = y2 - y1
    d2 = dx2 + dy2
    println("d2 is ", d2)
    0.0
end
```

JULIA

Again, you would run the program at this stage and check the output (which should be 25). Superscript numbers are also available ( `\^2` TAB ). Finally, you can use `sqrt` to compute and return the result:

```
function distance(x1, y1, x2, y2)
    dx = x2 - x1
    dy = y2 - y1
    d2 = dx2 + dy2
    sqrt(d2)
end
```

JULIA

If that works correctly, you are done. Otherwise, you might want to print the value of `sqrt(d2)` before the `return` statement.

The final version of the function doesn't display anything when it runs; it only returns a value. The print statements we wrote are useful for debugging, but once you get the function working, you should remove them. Code like that is called *scaffolding* because it is helpful for building the program but is not part of the final product.

When you start out, you should add only a line or two of code at a time. As you gain more experience, you might find yourself writing and debugging bigger chunks. Either way, incremental development can save you a lot of debugging time.

The key aspects of the process are:

1. Start with a working program and make small incremental changes. At any point, if there is an error, you should have a good idea where it is.
2. Use variables to hold intermediate values so you can display and check them.
3. Once the program is working, you might want to remove some of the scaffolding or consolidate multiple statements into compound expressions, but only if it does not make the program difficult to read.

**TIP**

As an exercise, use incremental development to write a function called `hypotenuse` that returns the length of the hypotenuse of a right triangle given the lengths of the other two legs as arguments. Record each stage of the development process as you go.

## Composition

As you should expect by now, you can call one function from within another. As an example, we'll write a function that takes two points, the center of the circle and a point on the perimeter, and computes the area of the circle.

Assume that the center point is stored in the variables `xc` and `yc`, and the perimeter point is in `xp` and `yp`. The first step is to find the radius of the circle, which is the distance between the two points. We just wrote a function, `distance`, that does that:

```
radius = distance(xc, yc, xp, yp)
```

JULIA

The next step is to find the area of a circle with that radius; we just wrote that, too:

```
result = area(radius)
```

JULIA

Encapsulating these steps in a function, we get:

```
function circlearea(xc, yc, xp, yp)
    radius = distance(xc, yc, xp, yp)
    result = area(radius)
    return result
end
```

JULIA

The temporary variables `radius` and `result` are useful for development and debugging, but once the program is working, we can make it more concise by composing the function calls:

```
function circlearea(xc, yc, xp, yp)
    area(distance(xc, yc, xp, yp))
end
```

## Boolean Functions

Functions can return booleans, which is often convenient for hiding complicated tests inside functions. For example:

```
function isdivisible(x, y)
    if x % y == 0
        return true
    else
        return false
    end
end
```

It is common to give boolean functions names that sound like yes/no questions; `isdivisible` returns either `true` or `false` to indicate whether `x` is divisible by `y`.

Here is an example:

```
julia> isdivisible(6, 4)
false
julia> isdivisible(6, 3)
true
```

The result of the `==` operator is a boolean, so we can write the function more concisely by returning it directly:

```
function isdivisible(x, y)
    x % y == 0
end
```

Boolean functions are often used in conditional statements:

```
if isdivisible(x, y)
    println("x is divisible by y")
end
```

It might be tempting to write something like:

```
if isdivisible(x, y) == true
    println("x is divisible by y")
end
```

But the extra comparison is unnecessary.

### TIP

As an exercise, write a function `isbetween(x, y, z)` that returns `true` if  $x \leq y \leq z$  or `false` otherwise.



## More Recursion

We have only covered a small subset of Julia, but you might be interested to know that this subset is a *complete* programming language, which means that anything that can be computed can be expressed in this language. Any program ever written could be rewritten using only the language features you have learned so far (actually, you would need a few commands to control devices like the mouse, disks, etc., but that's all).

Proving that claim is a nontrivial exercise first accomplished by Alan Turing, one of the first computer scientists (some would argue that he was a mathematician, but a lot of early computer scientists started as mathematicians). Accordingly, it is known as the Turing Thesis. For a more complete (and accurate) discussion of the Turing Thesis, I recommend Michael Sipser's book *Introduction to the Theory of Computation*.

To give you an idea of what you can do with the tools you have learned so far, we'll evaluate a few recursively defined mathematical functions. A recursive definition is similar to a circular definition, in the sense that the definition contains a reference to the thing being defined. A truly circular definition is not very useful:

### vorpall

An adjective used to describe something that is vorpall.

If you saw that definition in the dictionary, you might be annoyed. On the other hand, if you looked up the definition of the factorial function, denoted with the symbol  $!$ , you might get something like this:

$$n! = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n = 0 \\ n(n-1)! & \text{if } n > 0 \end{cases}$$

This definition says that the factorial of 0 is 1, and the factorial of any other value,  $n$ , is  $n$  multiplied by the factorial of  $n-1$ .

So  $3!$  is 3 times  $2!$ , which is 2 times  $1!$ , which is 1 times  $0!$ . Putting it all together,  $3!$  equals 3 times 2 times 1 times 1, which is 6.

If you can write a recursive definition of something, you can write a Julia program to evaluate it. The first step is to decide what the parameters should be. In this case it should be clear that factorial takes an integer:

```
function fact(n) end
```

JULIA

If the argument happens to be 0, all we have to do is return 1:

```
function fact(n)
    if n == 0
        return 1
    end
end
```

JULIA

Otherwise, and this is the interesting part, we have to make a recursive call to find the factorial of  $n-1$  and then multiply it by  $n$ :

```

function fact(n)
    if n == 0
        return 1
    else
        recurse = fact(n-1)
        result = n * recurse
        return result
    end
end

```

The flow of execution for this program is similar to the flow of `countdown` in Recursion. If we call `fact` with the value 3:

1. Since 3 is not 0, we take the second branch and calculate the factorial of `n-1` ...
  - a. Since 2 is not 0, we take the second branch and calculate the factorial of `n-1` ...
    - i. Since 1 is not 0, we take the second branch and calculate the factorial of `n-1` ...
      - A. Since 0 equals 0, we take the first branch and return 1 without making any more recursive calls.
    - ii. The return value, 1, is multiplied by `n`, which is 1, and the `result` is returned.
  - b. The return value, 1, is multiplied by `n`, which is 2, and the `result` is returned.
2. The return value 2 is multiplied by `n`, which is 3, and the result, 6, becomes the return value of the function call that started the whole process.

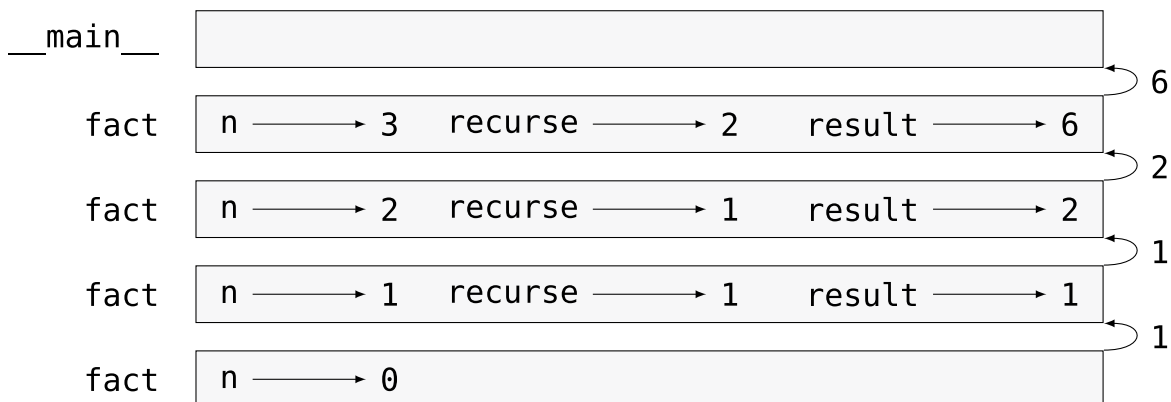


Figure 9. Stack diagram

Stack diagram shows what the stack diagram looks like for this sequence of function calls.

The return values are shown being passed back up the stack. In each frame, the return value is the value of `result`, which is the product of `n` and `recurse`.

In the last frame, the local variables `recurse` and `result` do not exist, because the branch that creates them does not run.

#### TIP

Julia provides the function `factorial` to calculate the factorial of an integer number.

## Leap of Faith

Following the flow of execution is one way to read programs, but it can quickly become overwhelming. An alternative is what I call the “leap of faith”. When you come to a function call, instead of following the flow of execution, you *assume* that the function works correctly and returns the right result.

In fact, you are already practicing this leap of faith when you use built-in functions. When you call `cos` or `exp`, you don’t examine the bodies of those functions. You just assume that they work because the people who wrote the built-in functions were good programmers.

The same is true when you call one of your own functions. For example, in Boolean Functions, we wrote a function called `isdivisible` that determines whether one number is divisible by another. Once we have convinced ourselves that this function is correct—by examining the code and testing—we can use the function without looking at the body again.

The same is true of recursive programs. When you get to the recursive call, instead of following the flow of execution, you should assume that the recursive call works (returns the correct result) and then ask yourself, “Assuming that I can find the factorial of  $n - 1$ , can I compute the factorial of  $n$ ?” It is clear that you can, by multiplying by  $n$ .

Of course, it’s a bit strange to assume that the function works correctly when you haven’t finished writing it, but that’s why it’s called a leap of faith!

## One More Example

After factorial, the most common example of a recursively defined mathematical function is fibonacci, which has the following definition (see [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fibonacci\\_number](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fibonacci_number)):

$$fib(n) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } n = 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } n = 1 \\ fib(n - 1) + fib(n - 2) & \text{if } n > 1 \end{cases}$$

Translated into Julia, it looks like this:

```
function fib(n)
    if n == 0
        return 0
    elseif n == 1
        return 1
    else
        return fib(n-1) + fib(n-2)
    end
end
```

JULIA

If you try to follow the flow of execution here, even for fairly small values of `n`, your head explodes. But according to the leap of faith, if you assume that the two recursive calls work correctly, then it is clear that you get the right result by adding them together.

## Checking Types

What happens if we call `fact` and give it `1.5` as an argument?

```
julia> fact(1.5)
ERROR: StackOverflowError:
Stacktrace:
 [1] fact(::Float64) at ./REPL[3]:2
```

It looks like an infinite recursion. How can that be? The function has a base case—when `n == 0`. But if `n` is not an integer, we can *miss* the base case and recurse forever.

In the first recursive call, the value of `n` is `0.5`. In the next, it is `-0.5`. From there, it gets smaller (more negative), but it will never be `0`.

We have two choices. We can try to generalize the factorial function to work with floating-point numbers, or we can make `fact` check the type of its argument. The first option is called the gamma function and it's a little beyond the scope of this book. So we'll go for the second.

We can use the built-in operator `isa` to verify the type of the argument. While we're at it, we can also make sure the argument is positive:

```
function fact(n)
    if !(n isa Int64)
        println("Factorial is only defined for integers.")
        return
    elseif n < 0
        println("Factorial is not defined for negative integers.")
        return
    elseif n == 0
        return 1
    else
        return n * fact(n-1)
    end
end
```

The first base case handles nonintegers; the second handles negative integers. In both cases, the program prints an error message and returns `nothing` to indicate that something went wrong:

```
julia> fact("fred")
Factorial is only defined for integers.
julia> fact(-2)
Factorial is not defined for negative integers.
```

If we get past both checks, we know that `n` is positive or zero, so we can prove that the recursion terminates.

This program demonstrates a pattern sometimes called a *guardian*. The first two conditionals act as guardians, protecting the code that follows from values that might cause an error. The guardians make it possible to prove the correctness of the code.

In Catching Exceptions we will see a more flexible alternative to printing an error message: raising an exception.

## Debugging

Breaking a large program into smaller functions creates natural checkpoints for debugging. If a function is not working, there are three possibilities to consider:

- There is something wrong with the arguments the function is getting; a precondition is violated.
- There is something wrong with the function; a postcondition is violated.
- There is something wrong with the return value or the way it is being used.

To rule out the first possibility, you can add a print statement at the beginning of the function and display the values of the parameters (and maybe their types). Or you can write code that checks the preconditions explicitly.

If the parameters look good, add a print statement before each return statement and display the return value. If possible, check the result by hand. Consider calling the function with values that make it easy to check the result (as in Incremental Development).

If the function seems to be working, look at the function call to make sure the return value is being used correctly (or used at all!).

Adding print statements at the beginning and end of a function can help make the flow of execution more visible. For example, here is a version of `fact` with print statements:

```
function fact(n)
    space = " " ^ (4 * n)
    println(space, "factorial ", n)
    if n == 0
        println(space, "returning 1")
        return 1
    else
        recurse = fact(n-1)
        result = n * recurse
        println(space, "returning ", result)
        return result
    end
end
```

JULIA

`space` is a string of space characters that controls the indentation of the output:

```
julia> fact(4)
        factorial 4
      factorial 3
    factorial 2
  factorial 1
factorial 0
returning 1
  returning 1
    returning 2
      returning 6
        returning 24
24
```

JLCON

If you are confused about the flow of execution, this kind of output can be helpful. It takes some time to develop effective scaffolding, but a little bit of scaffolding can save a lot of debugging.

## Glossary

### temporary variable

A variable used to store an intermediate value in a complex calculation.

### dead code

Part of a program that can never run, often because it appears after a return statement.

### incremental development

A program development plan intended to avoid debugging by adding and testing only a small amount of code at a time.

### scaffolding

Code that is used during program development but is not part of the final version.

### guardian

A programming pattern that uses a conditional statement to check for and handle circumstances that might cause an error.

## Exercises

### Exercise 6-1

Draw a stack diagram for the following program. What does the program print?

```
function b(z)
    prod = a(z, z)
    println(z, " ", prod)
    prod
end

function a(x, y)
    x = x + 1
    x * y
end

function c(x, y, z)
    total = x + y + z
    square = b(total)^2
    square
end

x = 1
y = x + 1
println(c(x, y+3, x+y))
```

JULIA

### Exercise 6-2

The Ackermann function,  $A(m, n)$ , is defined:

$$A(m, n) = \begin{cases} n + 1 & \text{if } m = 0 \\ A(m - 1, 1) & \text{if } m > 0 \text{ and } n = 0 \\ A(m - 1, A(m, n - 1)) & \text{if } m > 0 \text{ and } n > 0. \end{cases}$$

See [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ackermann\\_function](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ackermann_function). Write a function named `ack` that evaluates the Ackermann function. Use your function to evaluate `ack(3, 4)`, which should be 125. What happens for larger values of `m` and `n`?

### Exercise 6-3

A palindrome is a word that is spelled the same backward and forward, like “noon” and “redivider”. Recursively, a word is a palindrome if the first and last letters are the same and the middle is a palindrome.

The following are functions that take a string argument and return the first, last, and middle letters:

```
function first(word)
    first = firstindex(word)
    word[first]
end

function last(word)
    last = lastindex(word)
    word[last]
end

function middle(word)
    first = firstindex(word)
    last = lastindex(word)
    word[nextind(word, first) : prevind(word, last)]
end
```

JULIA

We’ll see how they work in Strings

1. Test these functions out. What happens if you call `middle` with a string with two letters? One letter? What about the empty string, which is written `""` and contains no letters?
2. Write a function called `ispalindrome` that takes a string argument and returns `true` if it is a palindrome and `false` otherwise. Remember that you can use the built-in function `length` to check the length of a string.

### Exercise 6-4

A number,  $a$ , is a power of  $b$  if it is divisible by  $b$  and  $\frac{a}{b}$  is a power of  $b$ . Write a function called `ispower` that takes parameters `a` and `b` and returns `true` if `a` is a power of `b`.

TIP

You will have to think about the base case.

### Exercise 6-5

The greatest common divisor (GCD) of  $a$  and  $b$  is the largest number that divides both of them with no remainder.

One way to find the GCD of two numbers is based on the observation that if  $r$  is the remainder when  $a$  is divided by  $b$ , then  $\text{gcd}(a, b) = \text{gcd}(b, r)$ . As a base case, we can use  $\text{gcd}(a, 0) = a$ .

Write a function called `gcd` that takes parameters `a` and `b` and returns their greatest common divisor.

Credit: This exercise is based on an example from Abelson and Sussman’s *Structure and Interpretation of Computer Programs*.

## 7. Iteration

This chapter is about iteration, which is the ability to run a block of statements repeatedly. We saw a kind of iteration, using recursion, in Recursion. We saw another kind, using a `for` loop, in Simple Repetition. In this chapter we'll see yet another kind, using a `while` statement. But first I want to say a little more about variable assignment.

### Reassignment

As you may have discovered, it is legal to make more than one assignment to the same variable. A new assignment makes an existing variable refer to a new value (and stop referring to the old value).

```
julia> x=5
5
julia> x=7
7
```

JLCON

The first time we display `x`, its value is 5; the second time, its value is 7.

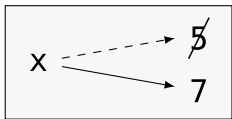


Figure 10. State diagram

State diagram shows what *reassignment* looks like in a state diagram.

At this point I want to address a common source of confusion. Because Julia uses the equal sign (`=`) for assignment, it is tempting to interpret a statement like `a = b` as a mathematical proposition of equality; that is, the claim that `a` and `b` are equal. But this interpretation is wrong.

First, equality is a symmetric relationship and assignment is not. For example, in mathematics, if  $a = 7$  then  $7 = a$ . But in Julia, the statement `a = 7` is legal and `7 = a` is not.

Also, in mathematics, a proposition of equality is either true or false for all time. If  $a = b$  now, then  $a$  will always equal  $b$ . In Julia, an assignment statement can make two variables equal, but they don't have to stay that way:

```
julia> a = 5
5
julia> b = a    # a and b are now equal
5
julia> a = 3    # a and b are no longer equal
3
julia> b
5
```

JLCON

The third line changes the value of `a` but does not change the value of `b`, so they are no longer equal.

#### WARNING

Reassigning variables is often useful, but you should use it with caution. If the values of variables change frequently, it can make the code difficult to read and debug.



## Updating Variables

A common kind of reassignment is an update, where the new value of the variable depends on the old.

```
julia> x = x + 1
8
```

JLCON

This means “get the current value of `x`, add one, and then update `x` with the new value.”

If you try to update a variable that doesn’t exist, you get an error, because Julia evaluates the right side before it assigns a value to `x`:

```
julia> y = y + 1
ERROR: UndefVarError: y not defined
```

JLCON

Before you can update a variable, you have to initialize it, usually with a simple assignment:

```
julia> y = 0
0
julia> y = y + 1
1
```

JLCON

Updating a variable by adding 1 is called an *increment*; subtracting 1 is called a *decrement*.

## The `while` Statement

Computers are often used to automate repetitive tasks. Repeating identical or similar tasks without making errors is something that computers do well and people do poorly. In a computer program, repetition is also called *iteration*.

We have already seen two functions, `countdown` and `println`, that iterate using recursion. Because iteration is so common, Julia provides language features to make it easier. One is the `for` statement we saw in Simple Repetition. We’ll get back to that later.

Another is the *while* statement. Here is a version of `countdown` that uses a `while` statement:

```
function countdown(n)
    while n > 0
        print(n, " ")
        n = n - 1
    end
    println("Blastoff!")
end
```

JULIA

You can almost read the `while` statement as if it were English. It means, “While `n` is greater than 0, display the value of `n` and then decrement `n`. When you get to 0, display the word Blastoff!”

More formally, here is the flow of execution for a `while` statement:

1. Determine whether the condition is true or false.
2. If false, exit the while statement and continue execution at the next statement.

3. If the condition is true, run the body and then go back to step 1.

This type of flow is called a loop because the third step loops back around to the top.

The body of the loop should change the value of one or more variables so that the condition becomes false eventually and the loop terminates. Otherwise the loop will repeat forever, which is called an *infinite loop*. An endless source of amusement for computer scientists is the observation that the directions on shampoo, “Lather, rinse, repeat”, are an infinite loop.

In the case of `countdown`, we can prove that the loop terminates: if `n` is zero or negative, the loop never runs. Otherwise, `n` gets smaller each time through the loop, so eventually we have to get to 0.

For some other loops, it is not so easy to tell. For example:

```
function seq(n)
    while n != 1
        println(n)
        if n % 2 == 0      # n is even
            n = n / 2
        else              # n is odd
            n = n*3 + 1
        end
    end
end
```

JULIA

The condition for this loop is `n != 1`, so the loop will continue until `n` is 1, which makes the condition false.

Each time through the loop, the program outputs the value of `n` and then checks whether it is even or odd. If it is even, `n` is divided by 2. If it is odd, the value of `n` is replaced with `n*3 + 1`. For example, if the argument passed to sequence is 3, the resulting values of `n` are 3, 10, 5, 16, 8, 4, 2, 1.

Since `n` sometimes increases and sometimes decreases, there is no obvious proof that `n` will ever reach 1, or that the program terminates. For some particular values of `n`, we can prove termination. For example, if the starting value is a power of two, `n` will be even every time through the loop until it reaches 1. The previous example ends with such a sequence, starting with 16.

The hard question is whether we can prove that this program terminates for all positive values of `n`. So far, no one has been able to prove it or disprove it! (See [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Collatz\\_conjecture](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Collatz_conjecture).)

#### TIP

As an exercise, rewrite the function `println` from Recursion using iteration instead of recursion.

## break

Sometimes you don't know it's time to end a loop until you get half way through the body. In that case you can use the *break statement* to jump out of the loop.

For example, suppose you want to take input from the user until they type done. You could write:

```

while true
    print("> ")
    line = readline()
    if line == "done"
        break
    end
    println(line)
end
println("Done!")

```

The loop condition is `true`, which is always true, so the loop runs until it hits the `break` statement.

Each time through, it prompts the user with an angle bracket. If the user types `done`, the `break` statement exits the loop. Otherwise the program echoes whatever the user types and goes back to the top of the loop. Here's a sample run:

```

> not done
not done
> done
Done!

```

This way of writing while loops is common because you can check the condition anywhere in the loop (not just at the top) and you can express the stop condition affirmatively (“stop when this happens”) rather than negatively (“keep going until that happens”).

## continue

The `break` statement exits the loop. When a *continue statement* is encountered inside a loop, control jumps to the beginning of the loop for the next iteration, skipping the execution of statements inside the body of the loop for the current iteration. For example:

```

for i in 1:10
    if i % 3 == 0
        continue
    end
    print(i, " ")
end

```

Output:

```
1 2 4 5 7 8 10
```

If `i` is divisible by 3, the `continue` statement stops the current iteration and the next iteration starts. Only the numbers in the range 1 to 10 not divisible by 3 are printed.

## Square Roots

Loops are often used in programs that compute numerical results by starting with an approximate answer and iteratively improving it.

For example, one way of computing square roots is Newton's method. Suppose that you want to know the square root of  $a$ . If you start with almost any estimate,  $x$ , you can compute a better estimate with the following formula:

$$y = \frac{1}{2} \left( x + \frac{a}{x} \right)$$

For example, if  $a$  is 4 and  $x$  is 3:

```
julia> a = 4
4
julia> x = 3
3
julia> y = (x + a/x) / 2
2.1666666666666665
```

JLCON

The result is closer to the correct answer ( $\sqrt{4} = 2$ ). If we repeat the process with the new estimate, it gets even closer:

```
julia> x = y
2.1666666666666665
julia> y = (x + a/x) / 2
2.0064102564102564
```

JLCON

After a few more updates, the estimate is almost exact:

```
julia> x = y
2.0064102564102564
julia> y = (x + a/x) / 2
2.0000102400262145
julia> x = y
2.0000102400262145
julia> y = (x + a/x) / 2
2.0000000000262146
```

JLCON

In general we don't know ahead of time how many steps it takes to get to the right answer, but we know when we get there because the estimate stops changing:

```
julia> x = y
2.0000000000262146
julia> y = (x + a/x) / 2
2.0
julia> x = y
2.0
julia> y = (x + a/x) / 2
2.0
```

JLCON

When  $y == x$ , we can stop. Here is a loop that starts with an initial estimate,  $x$ , and improves it until it stops changing:

```
while true
    println(x)
    y = (x + a/x) / 2
    if y == x
        break
    end
    x = y
end
```

JULIA

For most values of  $x$  this works fine, but in general it is dangerous to test float equality. Floating-point values are only approximately right: most rational numbers, like  $\frac{1}{3}$ , and irrational numbers, like  $\sqrt{2}$ , can't be represented exactly with a `Float64`.

Rather than checking whether `x` and `y` are exactly equal, it is safer to use the built-in function `abs` to compute the absolute value, or magnitude, of the difference between them:

```
if abs(y-x) < ε
    break
end
```

JULIA

Where  $\epsilon$  (`\varepsilon` TAB) has a value like `0.0000001` that determines how close is close enough.

## Algorithms

Newton's method is an example of an *algorithm*: it is a mechanical process for solving a category of problems (in this case, computing square roots).

To understand what an algorithm is, it might help to start with something that is not an algorithm. When you learned to multiply single-digit numbers, you probably memorized the multiplication table. In effect, you memorized 100 specific solutions. That kind of knowledge is not algorithmic.

But if you were “lazy”, you might have learned a few tricks. For example, to find the product of  $n$  and 9, you can write  $n - 1$  as the first digit and  $10 - n$  as the second digit. This trick is a general solution for multiplying any single-digit number by 9. That's an algorithm!

Similarly, the techniques you learned for addition with carrying, subtraction with borrowing, and long division are all algorithms. One of the characteristics of algorithms is that they do not require any intelligence to carry out. They are mechanical processes where each step follows from the last according to a simple set of rules.

Executing algorithms is boring, but designing them is interesting, intellectually challenging, and a central part of computer science.

Some of the things that people do naturally, without difficulty or conscious thought, are the hardest to express algorithmically. Understanding natural language is a good example. We all do it, but so far no one has been able to explain *how* we do it, at least not in the form of an algorithm.

## Debugging

As you start writing bigger programs, you might find yourself spending more time debugging. More code means more chances to make an error and more places for bugs to hide.

One way to cut your debugging time is “debugging by bisection”. For example, if there are 100 lines in your program and you check them one at a time, it would take 100 steps.

Instead, try to break the problem in half. Look at the middle of the program, or near it, for an intermediate value you can check. Add a print statement (or something else that has a verifiable effect) and run the program.

If the mid-point check is incorrect, there must be a problem in the first half of the program. If it is correct, the problem is in the second half.

Every time you perform a check like this, you halve the number of lines you have to search. After six steps (which is fewer than 100), you would be down to one or two lines of code, at least in theory.

In practice it is not always clear what the “middle of the program” is and not always possible to check it. It doesn’t make sense to count lines and find the exact midpoint. Instead, think about places in the program where there might be errors and places where it is easy to put a check. Then choose a spot where you think the chances are about the same that the bug is before or after the check.

## Glossary

### **reassignment**

Assigning a new value to a variable that already exists.

### **update**

An assignment where the new value of the variable depends on the old.

### **initialization**

An assignment that gives an initial value to a variable that will be updated.

### **increment**

An update that increases the value of a variable (often by one).

### **decrement**

An update that decreases the value of a variable.

### **iteration**

Repeated execution of a set of statements using either a recursive function call or a loop.

### **while statement**

Statement that allows iterations controlled by a condition.

### **break statement**

Statement allowing to jump out of a loop.

### **continue statement**

Statement inside a loop that jumps to the beginning of the loop for the next iteration.

### **infinite loop**

A loop in which the terminating condition is never satisfied.

### **algorithm**

A general process for solving a category of problems.

## Exercises

### Exercise 7-1

Copy the loop from Square Roots and encapsulate it in a function called `mysqrt` that takes `a` as a parameter, chooses a reasonable value of `x`, and returns an estimate of the square root of `a`.

To test it, write a function named `testsquareroot` that prints a table like this:

a	mysqrt	sqrt	diff
1.0	1.0	1.0	0.0
2.0	1.414213562373095	1.4142135623730951	2.220446049250313e-16
3.0	1.7320508075688772	1.7320508075688772	0.0
4.0	2.0	2.0	0.0
5.0	2.23606797749979	2.23606797749979	0.0
6.0	2.449489742783178	2.449489742783178	0.0
7.0	2.6457513110645907	2.6457513110645907	0.0
8.0	2.82842712474619	2.8284271247461903	4.440892098500626e-16
9.0	3.0	3.0	0.0

The first column is a number, `a`; the second column is the square root of `a` computed with `mysqrt`; the third column is the square root computed by `sqrt`; the fourth column is the absolute value of the difference between the two estimates.

### Exercise 7-2

The built-in function `Meta.parse` takes a string and transforms it into an expression. This expression can be evaluated in Julia with the function `Core.eval`. For example:

```
julia> expr = Meta.parse("1+2*3")
:(1 + 2 * 3)
julia> Core.eval(Main, expr)
7
julia> expr = Meta.parse("sqrt(π)")
:(sqrt(π))
julia> Core.eval(Main, expr)
1.7724538509055159
```

JLCON

Write a function called `evalloop` that iteratively prompts the user, takes the resulting input and evaluates it using `Core.eval`, and prints the result. It should continue until the user enters `done`, and then return the value of the last expression it evaluated.

### Exercise 7-3

The mathematician Srinivasa Ramanujan found an infinite series that can be used to generate a numerical approximation of  $\frac{1}{\pi}$ :

$$\frac{1}{\pi} = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{9801} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(4k)! (1103 + 26390k)}{(k!)^4 396^{4k}}$$

Write a function called `estimatepi` that uses this formula to compute and return an estimate of  $\pi$ . It should use a while loop to compute terms of the summation until the last term is smaller than `1e-15` (which is Julia notation for  $10^{-15}$ ). You can check the result by comparing it to `π`.

## 8. Strings

Strings are not like integers, floats, and booleans. A string is a *sequence*, which means it is an ordered collection of other values. In this chapter you'll see how to access the characters that make up a string, and you'll learn about some of the string helper functions provided by Julia.

### Characters

The characters that English speakers are familiar with are the letters A, B, C, etc., together with numerals and common punctuation symbols. These characters are standardized together with a mapping to integer values between 0 and 127 by the *ASCII standard*.

There are, of course, many other characters used in non-English languages, including variants of the ASCII characters with accents and other modifications, related scripts such as Cyrillic and Greek, and scripts completely unrelated to ASCII and English, including Arabic, Chinese, Hebrew, Hindi, Japanese, and Korean.

The *Unicode standard* tackles the complexities of what exactly a character is, and is generally accepted as the definitive standard addressing this problem.

A `Char` value represents a single character and is surrounded by single quotes:

```
julia> 'x'
'x': ASCII/Unicode U+0078 (category Ll: Letter, lowercase)
julia> '?'
'?: Unicode U+01f34c (category So: Symbol, other)
julia> typeof('x')
Char
```

JLCON

Emojis are part of the Unicode standard.

### A String Is a Sequence

A string is a sequence of characters. You can access the characters one at a time with the bracket operator:

```
julia> fruit = "banana"
"banana"
julia> letter = fruit[1]
'b': ASCII/Unicode U+0062 (category Ll: Letter, lowercase)
```

JLCON

The second statement selects character number 1 from `fruit` and assigns it to `letter`.

The expression in brackets is called an *index*. The index indicates which character in the sequence you want (hence the name).

All indexing in Julia is 1-based: the first element of any integer-indexed object is found at index 1 and the last element at index `end`:

```
julia> fruit[end]
'a': ASCII/Unicode U+0061 (category Ll: Letter, lowercase)
```

JLCON

As an index you can use an expression that contains variables and operators:



```
julia> i = 1
1
julia> fruit[i+1]
'a': ASCII/Unicode U+0061 (category Ll: Letter, lowercase)
julia> fruit[end-1]
'n': ASCII/Unicode U+006e (category Ll: Letter, lowercase)
```

JLCON

But the value of the index has to be an integer. Otherwise you get:

```
julia> letter = fruit[1.5]
ERROR: MethodError: no method matching getindex(::String, ::Float64)
```

JLCON

## length

`length` is a built-in function that returns the number of characters in a string:

```
julia> fruits = "? ? ?"
"? ? ?"
julia> len = length(fruits)
5
```

JLCON

### WARNING

To get the last letter of a string, you might be tempted to try something like this:

```
julia> last = fruits[len]
' ': ASCII/Unicode U+0020 (category Zs: Separator, space)
```

JLCON

But you might not get what you expect.

Strings are encoded using the *UTF-8 encoding*. UTF-8 is a variable-width encoding, meaning that not all characters are encoded in the same number of bytes.

The function `sizeof` gives the number of bytes in a string:

```
julia> sizeof("?")
4
```

JLCON

Because an emoji is encoded in 4 bytes and string indexing is byte based, the 5th element of `fruits` is a `SPACE`.

This means also that not every byte index into a UTF-8 string is necessarily a valid index for a character. If you index into a string at such an invalid byte index, an error is thrown:

```
julia> fruits[2]
ERROR: StringIndexError{String}(" ? ? ", 2)
```

JLCON

In the case of `fruits`, the character `?` is a four-byte character, so the indices 2, 3 and 4 are invalid and the next character's index is 5; this next valid index can be computed by `nextind(fruits, 1)`, and the next index after that by `nextind(fruits, 5)` and so on.

## Traversal

A lot of computations involve processing a string one character at a time. Often they start at the beginning, select each character in turn, do something to it, and continue until the end. This pattern of processing is called a *traversal*. One way to write a traversal is with a `while` loop:

```
index = firstindex(fruits)
while index <= sizeof(fruits)
    letter = fruits[index]
    println(letter)
    global index = nextind(fruits, index)
end
```

JULIA

This loop traverses the string and displays each letter on a line by itself. The loop condition is `index <= sizeof(fruit)`, so when `index` is larger than the number of bytes in the string, the condition is `false`, and the body of the loop doesn't run.

The function `firstindex` returns the first valid byte index. The keyword `global` before `index` indicates that we want to reassign the variable `index` defined in `__main__` (see Global Variables).

### TIP

As an exercise, write a function that takes a string as an argument and displays the letters backward, one per line.

Another way to write a traversal is with a `for` loop:

```
for letter in fruits
    println(letter)
end
```

JULIA

Each time through the loop, the next character in the string is assigned to the variable `letter`. The loop continues until no characters are left.

The following example shows how to use concatenation (string multiplication) and a `for` loop to generate an abecedarian series (that is, in alphabetical order). In Robert McCloskey's book *Make Way for Ducklings*, the names of the ducklings are Jack, Kack, Lack, Mack, Nack, Ouack, Pack, and Quack. This loop outputs these names in order:

```
prefixes = "JKLMNOPQ"
suffix = "ack"

for letter in prefixes
    println(letter * suffix)
end
```

JULIA

Output:

```
Jack
Kack
Lack
Mack
Nack
Oack
Pack
Qack
```

Of course, that's not quite right because “Ouack” and “Quack” are misspelled. As an exercise, modify the program to fix this error.

## String Slices

A segment of a string is called a *slice*. Selecting a slice is similar to selecting a character:

```
julia> str = "Julius Caesar";

julia> str[1:6]
"Julius"
```

JLCON

The operator `[n:m]` returns the part of the string from the “n-eth” byte to the “m-eth” byte. So the same caution is needed as for simple indexing.

The `end` keyword can be used to indicate the last byte of the string:

```
julia> str[8:end]
"Caesar"
```

JLCON

If the first index is greater than the second the result is an *empty string*, represented by two quotation marks:

```
julia> str[8:7]
""
```

JLCON

An empty string contains no characters and has length 0, but other than that, it is the same as any other string.

### TIP

Continuing this example, what do you think `str[:]` means? Try it and see.

## Strings Are Immutable

It is tempting to use the `[]` operator on the left side of an assignment, with the intention of changing a character in a string. For example:

```
julia> greeting = "Hello, world!"
"Hello, world!"
julia> greeting[1] = 'J'
ERROR: MethodError: no method matching setindex!(::String, ::Char, ::Int64)
```

JLCON

The reason for the error is that strings are *immutable*, which means you can't change an existing string. The best you can do is create a new string that is a variation on the original:

```
julia> greeting = "J" * greeting[2:end]
"Jello, world!"
```

This example concatenates a new first letter onto a slice of greeting. It has no effect on the original string.

## String Interpolation

Constructing strings using concatenation can become a bit cumbersome, however. To reduce the need for these verbose calls to `string` or repeated multiplications, Julia allows *string interpolation* using `$`:

```
julia> greet = "Hello"
"Hello"
julia> whom = "World"
"World"
julia> "$greet, $(whom)!"
"Hello, World!"
```

This is more readable and convenient than string concatenation: `greet * ", " * whom * "!"`

The shortest complete expression after the `$` is taken as the expression whose value is to be interpolated into the string. Thus, you can interpolate any expression into a string using parentheses:

```
julia> "1 + 2 = $(1 + 2)"
"1 + 2 = 3"
```

## Searching

What does the following function do?

```
function find(word, letter)
    index = firstindex(word)
    while index <= sizeof(word)
        if word[index] == letter
            return index
        end
        index = nextind(word, index)
    end
    -1
end
```

In a sense, `find` is the inverse of the `[]` operator. Instead of taking an index and extracting the corresponding character, it takes a character and finds the index where that character appears. If the character is not found, the function returns `-1`.

This is the first example we have seen of a return statement inside a loop. If `word[index] == letter`, the function breaks out of the loop and returns immediately.

If the character doesn't appear in the string, the program exits the loop normally and returns `-1`.

This pattern of computation—traversing a sequence and returning when we find what we are looking for—is called a *search*.

## TIP

As an exercise, modify `find` so that it has a third parameter, the index in `word` where it should start looking.

## Looping and Counting

The following program counts the number of times the letter `a` appears in a string:

```
word = "banana"
count = 0
for letter in word
    if letter == 'a'
        global count = count + 1
    end
end
println(count)
```

JULIA

This program demonstrates another pattern of computation called a *counter*. The variable `count` is initialized to 0 and then incremented each time an `a` is found. When the loop exits, `count` contains the result—the total number of `a`'s.

## TIP

As an exercise, encapsulate this code in a function named `count`, and generalize it so that it accepts the string and the letter as arguments.

Then rewrite the function so that instead of traversing the string, it uses the three-parameter version of `find` from the previous section.

## String Library

Julia provides functions that perform a variety of useful operations on strings. For example, the function `uppercase` takes a string and returns a new string with all uppercase letters.

```
julia> uppercase("Hello, World!")
"HELLO, WORLD!"
```

JLCON

As it turns out, there is a function named `findfirst` that is remarkably similar to the function `find` we wrote:

```
julia> findfirst("a", "banana")
2:2
```

JLCON

Actually, the `findfirst` function is more general than our function; it can find substrings, not just characters:

```
julia> findfirst("na", "banana")
3:4
```

JLCON

By default, `findfirst` starts at the beginning of the string, but the function `findnext` takes a third argument, the `index` where it should start:

```
julia> findnext("na", "banana", 4)
5:6
```

JLCON

## The `∈` Operator

The operator `∈` ( `\in` TAB ) is a boolean operator that takes a character and a string and returns `true` if the first appears as in the second:

```
julia> 'a' ∈ "banana"    # 'a' in "banana"
true
```

JLCON

For example, the following function prints all the letters from word1 that also appear in word2:

```
function inboth(word1, word2)
    for letter in word1
        if letter ∈ word2
            print(letter, " ")
        end
    end
end
```

JULIA

With well-chosen variable names, Julia sometimes reads like English. You could read this loop, “for (each) letter in (the) first) word, if (the) letter is an element of (the second) word, print (the) letter.”

Here’s what you get if you compare `"apples"` and `"oranges"`:

```
julia> inboth("apples", "oranges")
a e s
```

JLCON

## String Comparison

The relational operators work on strings. To see if two strings are equal:

```
word = "Pineapple"
if word == "banana"
    println("All right, bananas.")
end
```

JULIA

Other relational operations are useful for putting words in alphabetical order:

```
if word < "banana"
    println("Your word, $word, comes before banana.")
elseif word > "banana"
    println("Your word, $word, comes after banana.")
else
    println("All right, bananas.")
end
```

JULIA

Julia does not handle uppercase and lowercase letters the same way people do. All the uppercase letters come before all the lowercase letters, so:

```
Your word, Pineapple, comes before banana.
```

## TIP

A common way to address this problem is to convert strings to a standard format, such as all lowercase, before performing the comparison.

## Debugging

When you use indices to traverse the values in a sequence, it is tricky to get the beginning and end of the traversal right. Here is a function that is supposed to compare two words and return `true` if one of the words is the reverse of the other, but it contains two errors:

```
function isreverse(word1, word2)
    if length(word1) != length(word2)
        return false
    end
    i = firstindex(word1)
    j = lastindex(word2)
    while j >= 0
        j = prevind(word2, j)
        if word1[i] != word2[j]
            return false
        end
        i = nextind(word1, i)
    end
    true
end
```

JULIA

The first `if` statement checks whether the words are the same length. If not, we can return `false` immediately. Otherwise, for the rest of the function, we can assume that the words are the same length. This is an example of the guardian pattern.

`i` and `j` are indices: `i` traverses `word1` forward while `j` traverses `word2` backward. If we find two letters that don't match, we can return `false` immediately. If we get through the whole loop and all the letters match, we return `true`.

The function `lastindex` returns the last valid byte index of a string and `prevind` the previous valid index of a character.

If we test this function with the words "pots" and "stop", we expect the return value `true`, but we get `false`:

```
julia> isreverse("pots", "stop")
false
```

JLCON

For debugging this kind of error, my first move is to print the values of the indices:

```
while j >= 0
    j = prevind(word2, j)
    println("$i $j")      # print here
    if word1[i] != word2[j]
```

JULIA

Now when I run the program again, I get more information:

```
julia> isreverse("pots", "stop")
1 3
false
```

JLCON

The first time through the loop, the value of `j` is 3, which has to be 4. This can be fixed by moving `j = prevind(word2, j)` to the end of the `while` loop.

If I fix that error and run the program again, I get:

```
julia> isreverse("pots", "stop")
1 4
2 3
3 2
4 1
5 0
ERROR: BoundsError: attempt to access "pots"
at index [5]
```

JLCON

This time a `BoundsError` has been thrown. The value of `i` is 5, which is out a range for the string `"pots"`.

#### TIP

Run the program on paper, changing the values of `i` and `j` during each iteration. Find and fix the second error in this function.

## Glossary

### sequence

An ordered collection of values where each value is identified by an integer index.

### ASCII standard

A character encoding standard for electronic communication specifying 128 characters.

### Unicode standard

A computing industry standard for the consistent encoding, representation, and handling of text expressed in most of the world's writing systems.

### index

An integer value used to select an item in a sequence, such as a character in a string. In Julia indices start from 1.

### UTF-8 encoding

A variable width character encoding capable of encoding all 1112064 valid code points in Unicode using one to four 8-bit bytes.

### traverse

To iterate through the items in a sequence, performing a similar operation on each.

### slice

A part of a string specified by a range of indices.

### empty string

A string with no characters and length 0, represented by two quotation marks.



## immutable

The property of a sequence whose items cannot be changed.

## string interpolation

The process of evaluating a string containing one or more placeholders, yielding a result in which the placeholders are replaced with their corresponding values.

## search

A pattern of traversal that stops when it finds what it is looking for.

## counter

A variable used to count something, usually initialized to zero and then incremented.

## Exercises

### Exercise 8-1

Read the documentation of the string functions at <https://docs.julialang.org/en/stable/base/strings/>. You might want to experiment with some of them to make sure you understand how they work. `strip` and `replace` are particularly useful.

The documentation uses a syntax that might be confusing. For example, in `search(string::AbstractString, chars::Chars, [start::Integer])`, the brackets indicate optional arguments. So `string` and `chars` are required, but `start` is optional.

### Exercise 8-2

There is a builtin function called `count` that is similar to the function in Looping and Counting. Read the documentation of this function and use it to count the number of `a`'s in "banana".

### Exercise 8-3

A string slice can take a third index. The first specifies the start, the third the end and the second the “step size”; that is, the number of spaces between successive characters. A step size of 2 means every other character; 3 means every third, etc.

```
julia> fruit = "banana"
"banana"
julia> fruit[1:2:6]
"bnn"
```

JLCON

A step size of -1 goes through the word backwards, so the slice `[end:-1:1]` generates a reversed string.

Use this idiom to write a one-line version of `ispalindrome` from Exercise 6.3.

### Exercise 8-4

The following functions are all *intended* to check whether a string contains any lowercase letters, but at least some of them are wrong. For each function, describe what the function actually does (assuming that the parameter is a string).

```

function anylowercase1(s)
    for c in s
        if islowercase(c)
            return true
        else
            return false
        end
    end
end

function anylowercase2(s)
    for c in s
        if islowercase('c')
            return "true"
        else
            return "false"
        end
    end
end

function anylowercase3(s)
    for c in s
        flag = islowercase(c)
    end
    flag
end

function anylowercase4(s)
    flag = false
    for c in s
        flag = flag || islowercase(c)
    end
    flag
end

function anylowercase5(s)
    for c in s
        if !islowercase(c)
            return false
        end
    end
    true
end

```

### Exercise 8-5

A Caesar cypher is a weak form of encryption that involves “rotating” each letter by a fixed number of places. To rotate a letter means to shift it through the alphabet, wrapping around to the beginning if necessary, so ‘A’ rotated by 3 is ‘D’ and ‘Z’ rotated by 1 is ‘A’.

To rotate a word, rotate each letter by the same amount. For example, "cheer" rotated by 7 is "jolly" and "melon" rotated by -10 is "cubed". In the movie *2001: A Space Odyssey*, the ship computer is called HAL, which is IBM rotated by -1.

Write a function called `rotateword` that takes a string and an integer as parameters, and returns a new string that contains the letters from the original string rotated by the given amount.

You might want to use the built-in function `Int`, which converts a character to a numeric code, and `Char`, which converts numeric codes to characters. Letters of the alphabet are encoded in alphabetical order, so for example:

```
julia> Int('c') - Int('a')  
2
```

JLCON

#### TIP

Because `c` is the third letter of the alphabet. But beware: the numeric codes for uppercase letters are different.

```
julia> Char(Int('A') + 32)  
'a': ASCII/Unicode U+0061 (category Ll: Letter, lowercase)
```

JLCON

Potentially offensive jokes on the Internet are sometimes encoded in ROT13, which is a Caesar cypher with rotation 13. If you are not easily offended, find and decode some of them.

## 9. Case Study: Word Play

This chapter presents the second case study, which involves solving word puzzles by searching for words that have certain properties. For example, we'll find the longest palindromes in English and search for words whose letters appear in alphabetical order. And I will present another program development plan: reduction to a previously solved problem.

### Reading Word Lists

For the exercises in this chapter we need a list of English words. There are lots of word lists available on the Web, but the one most suitable for our purpose is one of the word lists collected and contributed to the public domain by Grady Ward as part of the Moby lexicon project (see [https://wikipedia.org/wiki/Moby\\_Project](https://wikipedia.org/wiki/Moby_Project)). It is a list of 113809 official crosswords; that is, words that are considered valid in crossword puzzles and other word games. In the Moby collection, the filename is *113809ofc*; you can download a copy, with the simpler name *words.txt*, from <https://github.com/BenLauwens/ThinkJulia.jl/data/words.txt>.

This file is in plain text, so you can open it with a text editor, but you can also read it from Julia. The built-in function `open` takes the name of the file as a parameter and returns a *file stream* you can use to read the file.

```
julia> fin = open("words.txt")
IOStream(<file words.txt>)
```

JLCON

`fin` is a common name for a file stream used for input. Julia provides several function for reading, including `readline`, which reads characters from the file until it gets to a `NEWLINE` and returns the result as a string:

```
julia> readline(fin)
"aa"
```

JLCON

The first word in this particular list is “aa”, which is a kind of lava.

The file stream keeps track of where it is in the file, so if you call `readline` again, you get the next word:

```
julia> readline(fin)
"aah"
```

JLCON

The next word is “aah”, which is a perfectly legitimate word, so stop looking at me like that.

You can also use a file as part of a `for` loop. This program reads `words.txt` and prints each word, one per line:

```
for line in eachline("words.txt")
    println(line)
end
```

JULIA

## Exercises

### Exercise 9-1

Write a program that reads `words.txt` and prints only the words with more than 20 characters (not counting whitespace).

## Exercise 9-2

In 1939 Ernest Vincent Wright published a 50,000 word novel called Gadsby that does not contain the letter `e`. Since `e` is the most common letter in English, that's not easy to do.

In fact, it is difficult to construct a solitary thought without using that most common symbol. It is slow going at first, but with caution and hours of training you can gradually gain facility.

All right, I'll stop now.

Write a function called `hasno_e` that returns `true` if the given word doesn't have the letter `e` in it.

Modify your program from the previous section to print only the words that have no `e` and compute the percentage of the words in the list that have no `e`.

## Exercise 9-3

Write a function named `avoids` that takes a word and a string of forbidden letters, and that returns `true` if the word doesn't use any of the forbidden letters.

Modify your program to prompt the user to enter a string of forbidden letters and then print the number of words that don't contain any of them. Can you find a combination of 5 forbidden letters that excludes the smallest number of words?

## Exercise 9-4

Write a function named `usesonly` that takes a word and a string of letters, and that returns `true` if the word contains only letters in the list. Can you make a sentence using only the letters `acefhlo`? Other than "Hoe alfalfa?"

## Exercise 9-5

Write a function named `usesall` that takes a word and a string of required letters, and that returns `true` if the word uses all the required letters at least once. How many words are there that use all the vowels `aeiou`? How about `aeiouy`?

## Exercise 9-6

Write a function called `isabecedarian` that returns `true` if the letters in a word appear in alphabetical order (double letters are ok). How many abecedarian words are there?

## Search

All of the exercises in the previous section have something in common; they can be solved with the search pattern. The simplest example is:

```
function hasno_e(word)
    for letter in word
        if letter == 'e'
            return false
        end
    end
    true
end
```

JULIA

The `for` loop traverses the characters in `word`. If we find the letter `e`, we can immediately return `false`; otherwise we have to go to the next letter. If we exit the loop normally, that means we didn't find an `e`, so we return `true`.

You could write this function more concisely using the `∉` (`\notin` TAB) operator, but I started with this version because it demonstrates the logic of the search pattern.

`avoids` is a more general version of `hasno_e` but it has the same structure:

```
function avoids(word, forbidden)
    for letter in word
        if letter ∈ forbidden
            return false
        end
    end
    true
end
```

JULIA

We can return `false` as soon as we find a forbidden letter; if we get to the end of the loop, we return `true`.

`usesonly` is similar except that the sense of the condition is reversed:

```
function usesonly(word, available)
    for letter in word
        if letter ∉ available
            return false
        end
    end
    true
end
```

JULIA

Instead of an array of forbidden letters, we have an array of available letters. If we find a letter in `word` that is not in `available`, we can return `false`.

`usesall` is similar except that we reverse the role of the word and the string of letters:

```
function usesall(word, required)
    for letter in required
        if letter ∉ word
            return false
        end
    end
    true
end
```

JULIA

Instead of traversing the letters in `word`, the loop traverses the required letters. If any of the required letters do not appear in the word, we can return `false`.

If you were really thinking like a computer scientist, you would have recognized that `usesall` was an instance of a previously solved problem, and you would have written:

```
function usesall(word, required)
    usesonly(required, word)
end
```

JULIA

This is an example of a program development plan called *reduction to a previously solved problem*, which means that you recognize the problem you are working on as an instance of a solved problem and apply an existing solution.

## Looping with Indices

I wrote the functions in the previous section with `for` loops because I only needed the characters in the strings; I didn't have to do anything with the indices.

For `isabecedarian` we have to compare adjacent letters, which is a little tricky with a `for` loop:

```
function isabecedarian(word)
    i = firstindex(word)
    previous = word[i]
    j = nextind(word, i)
    for c in word[j:end]
        if c < previous
            return false
        end
        previous = c
    end
    true
end
```

JULIA

An alternative is to use recursion:

```
function isabecedarian(word)
    if length(word) <= 1
        return true
    end
    i = firstindex(word)
    j = nextind(word, i)
    if word[i] > word[j]
        return false
    end
    isabecedarian(word[j:end])
end
```

JULIA

Another option is to use a `while` loop:

```
function isabecedarian(word)
    i = firstindex(word)
    j = nextind(word, 1)
    while j <= sizeof(word)
        if word[j] < word[i]
            return false
        end
        i = j
        j = nextind(word, i)
    end
    true
end
```

JULIA

The loop starts at `i=1` and `j=nextind(word, 1)` and ends when `j>sizeof(word)`. Each time through the loop, it compares the `+i`-th character (which you can think of as the current character) to the `+j`-th character (which you can think of as the next).

If the next character is less than (alphabetically before) the current one, then we have discovered a break in the abecedarian trend, and we return `false`.

If we get to the end of the loop without finding a fault, then the word passes the test. To convince yourself that the loop ends correctly, consider an example like `"flossy"`.

Here is a version of `ispalindrome` that uses two indices; one starts at the beginning and goes up; the other starts at the end and goes down.

```
function ispalindrome(word)
    i = firstindex(word)
    j = lastindex(word)
    while i < j
        if word[i] != word[j]
            return false
        end
        i = nextind(word, i)
        j = prevind(word, j)
    end
    true
end
```

JULIA

Or we could reduce to a previously solved problem and write:

```
function ispalindrome(word)
    isreverse(word, word)
end
```

JULIA

Using `isreverse` from Debugging.

## Debugging

Testing programs is hard. The functions in this chapter are relatively easy to test because you can check the results by hand. Even so, it is somewhere between difficult and impossible to choose a set of words that test for all possible errors.

Taking `hasno_e` as an example, there are two obvious cases to check: words that have an `e` should return `false`, and words that don't should return `true`. You should have no trouble coming up with one of each.

Within each case, there are some less obvious subcases. Among the words that have an "e", you should test words with an "e" at the beginning, the end, and somewhere in the middle. You should test long words, short words, and very short words, like the empty string. The empty string is an example of a *special case*, which is one of the non-obvious cases where errors often lurk.

In addition to the test cases you generate, you can also test your program with a word list like `words.txt`. By scanning the output, you might be able to catch errors, but be careful: you might catch one kind of error (words that should not be included, but are) and not another (words that should be included, but aren't).

In general, testing can help you find bugs, but it is not easy to generate a good set of test cases, and even if you do, you can't be sure your program is correct. According to a legendary computer scientist:

“*Program testing can be used to show the presence of bugs, but never to show their absence!*”



## Glossary

### file stream

A value that represents an open file.

### reduction to a previously solved problem

A way of solving a problem by expressing it as an instance of a previously solved problem.

### special case

A test case that is atypical or non-obvious (and less likely to be handled correctly).

## Exercises

### Exercise 9-7

This question is based on a Puzzler that was broadcast on the radio program *Car Talk* (<https://www.cartalk.com/puzzler/browse>):

“Give me a word with three consecutive double letters. I'll give you a couple of words that almost qualify, but don't. For example, the word *committee*, *c-o-m-m-i-t-t-e-e*. It would be great except for the *i* that sneaks in there. Or *Mississippi*: *M-i-s-s-i-s-s-i-p-p-i*. If you could take out those *i*'s it would work. But there is a word that has three consecutive pairs of letters and to the best of my knowledge this may be the only word. Of course there are probably 500 more but I can only think of one. What is the word?

Write a program to find it.

### Exercise 9-8

Here's another *Car Talk* Puzzler (<https://www.cartalk.com/puzzler/browse>):

“I was driving on the highway the other day and I happened to notice my odometer. Like most odometers, it shows six digits, in whole miles only. So, if my car had 300000 miles, for example, I'd see 3-0-0-0-0-0.

Now, what I saw that day was very interesting. I noticed that the last 4 digits were palindromic; that is, they read the same forward as backward. For example, 5-4-4-5 is a palindrome, so my odometer could have read 3-1-5-4-4-5.

One mile later, the last 5 numbers were palindromic. For example, it could have read 3-6-5-4-5-6. One mile after that, the middle 4 out of 6 numbers were palindromic. And you ready for this? One mile later, all 6 were palindromic!

The question is, what was on the odometer when I first looked?

Write a Julia program that tests all the six-digit numbers and prints any numbers that satisfy these requirements.

### Exercise 9-9

Here's another *Car Talk* Puzzler you can solve with a search (<https://www.cartalk.com/puzzler/browse>):

“Recently I had a visit with my mom and we realized that the two digits that make up my age when reversed resulted in her age. For example, if she's 73, I'm 37. We wondered how often this has happened over the years but we got sidetracked with other topics and we never came up with an answer.

When I got home I figured out that the digits of our ages have been reversible six times so far. I also figured out that if we're lucky it would happen again in a few years, and if we're really lucky it would happen one more time after that. In other words, it would have happened 8 times over all. So the question is, how old am I now?

Write a Julia program that searches for solutions to this Puzzler.

#### TIP

You might find the function `lpad` useful.

## 10. Arrays

This chapter presents one of Julia’s most useful built-in types, arrays. You will also learn about objects and what can happen when you have more than one name for the same object.

### An Array is a Sequence

Like a string, an *array* is a sequence of values. In a string, the values are characters; in an array, they can be any type. The values in an array are called *elements* or sometimes *items*.

There are several ways to create a new array; the simplest is to enclose the elements in square brackets ( `[ ]` ):

```
[10, 20, 30, 40]
["crunchy frog", "ram bladder", "lark vomit"]
```

JULIA

The first example is an array of four integers. The second is an array of three strings. The elements of an array don’t have to be the same type. The following array contains a string, a float, an integer, and another array:

```
["spam", 2.0, 5, [10, 20]]
```

JULIA

An array within another array is *nested*. (((nested

An array that contains no elements is called an empty array; you can create one with empty brackets, `[]` .

As you might expect, you can assign array values to variables:

```
julia> cheeses = ["Cheddar", "Edam", "Gouda"];
julia> numbers = [42, 123];
julia> empty = [];

julia> print(cheeses, " ", numbers, " ", empty)
["Cheddar", "Edam", "Gouda"] [42, 123] Any[]
```

JLCON

The function `typeof` can be used to find out the kind of the array:

```
julia> typeof(cheeses)
Array{String,1}
julia> typeof(numbers)
Array{Int64,1}
julia> typeof(empty)
Array{Any,1}
```

JLCON

The kind of the array is specified between curly braces and is composed of a type and a number. The number indicate the dimensions. The array `empty` contains values of type `Any` . This is a predefined type that can represent any type.

### Arrays Are Mutable

The syntax for accessing the elements of an array is the same as for accessing the characters of a string—the bracket operator. The expression inside the brackets specifies the index. Remember that the indices start at 1:

```
julia> cheeses[1]
"Cheddar"
```

JLCON

Unlike strings, arrays are *mutable*. When the bracket operator appears on the left side of an assignment, it identifies the element of the array that will be assigned:

```
julia> numbers[2] = 5
5
julia> print(numbers)
[42, 5]
```

JLCON

The second element of `numbers`, which used to be 123, is now 5.

State diagram shows the state diagrams for `cheeses`, `numbers` and `empty`.

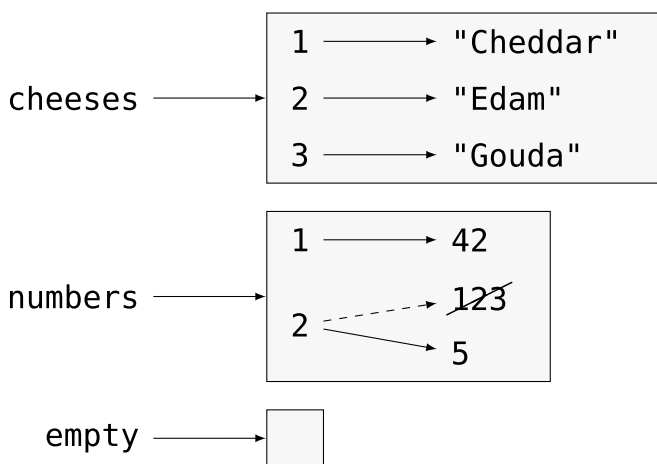


Figure 11. State diagram

Arrays are represented by boxes and the elements of the array inside. `cheeses` refers to an array with three elements indexed 1, 2 and 3. `numbers` contains two elements; the diagram shows that the value of the second element has been reassigned from 123 to 5. `empty` refers to an array with no elements.

Array indices work the same way as string indices:

- Any integer expression can be used as an index.
- If you try to read or write an element that does not exist, you get a `BoundsError`.
- The keyword `end` points to the last index of the array.

The `∈` operator also works on arrays:

```
julia> "Edam" ∈ cheeses
true
julia> "Brie" ∈ cheeses
false
```

JLCON

## Traversing an Array

The most common way to traverse the elements of an array is with a `for` loop. The syntax is the same as for strings:

```
for cheese in cheeses
    println(cheese)
end
```

This works well if you only need to read the elements of the array. But if you want to write or update the elements, you need the indices. A common way to do that is to use the built-in function `length`:

```
for i in 1:length(numbers)
    numbers[i] = numbers[i] * 2
end
```

This loop traverses the array and updates each element. `length` returns the number of elements in the array. Each time through the loop `i` gets the index of the next element. The assignment statement in the body uses `i` to read the old value of the element and to assign the new value.

A `for` loop over an empty array never runs the body:

```
for x in []
    println("This can never happens.")
end
```

Although an array can contain another array, the nested array still counts as a single element. The length of this array is four:

```
["spam", 1, ["Brie", "Roquefort", "Camembert"], [1, 2, 3]]
```

## Array Slices

The slice operator also works on arrays:

```
julia> t = ['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e', 'f'];

julia> print(t[1:3])
['a', 'b', 'c']
julia> print(t[3:end])
['c', 'd', 'e', 'f']
```

The slice operator `[:]`, makes a copy of the whole array:

```
julia> print(t[:])
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e', 'f']
```

Since arrays are mutable, it is often useful to make a copy before performing operations that modify arrays.

A slice operator on the left side of an assignment can update multiple elements:

```
julia> t[2:3] = ['x', 'y'];

julia> print(t)
['a', 'x', 'y', 'd', 'e', 'f']
```

## Array Library

Julia provides functions that operate on arrays. For example, `push!` adds a new element to the end of an array:

```
julia> t = ['a', 'b', 'c'];

julia> push!(t, 'd');

julia> print(t)
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd']
```

`append!` add the elements of the second array to the end of the first:

```
julia> t1 = ['a', 'b', 'c'];

julia> t2 = ['d', 'e'];

julia> append!(t1, t2);

julia> print(t1)
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e']
```

This example leaves `t2` unmodified.

`sort!` arranges the elements of the array from low to high:

```
julia> t = ['d', 'c', 'e', 'b', 'a'];

julia> sort!(t);

julia> print(t)
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e']
```

`sort` returns a copy of the elements of the array in order:

```
julia> t1 = ['d', 'c', 'e', 'b', 'a'];

julia> t2 = sort(t1);

julia> print(t1)
['d', 'c', 'e', 'b', 'a']
julia> print(t2)
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e']
```

### NOTE

As a style convention in Julia, `!` is appended to names of functions that modify their arguments.

## Map, Filter and Reduce

To add up all the numbers in an array, you can use a loop like this:

```
function addall(t)
    total = 0
    for x in t
        total += x
    end
    total
end
```

JULIA

`total` is initialized to 0. Each time through the loop, `+=` gets one element from the array. The `+=` operator provides a short way to update a variable. This *augmented assignment statement*,

```
total += x
```

JULIA

is equivalent to

```
total = total + x
```

JULIA

As the loop runs, `total` accumulates the sum of the elements; a variable used this way is sometimes called an *accumulator*.

Adding up the elements of an array is such a common operation that Julia provides it as a built-in function, `sum`:

```
julia> t = [1, 2, 3, 4];

julia> sum(t)
10
```

JLCON

An operation like this that combines a sequence of elements into a single value is sometimes called *reduce*.

Sometimes you want to traverse one array while building another. For example, the following function takes an array of strings and returns a new array that contains capitalized strings:

```
function capitalizeall(t)
    res = []
    for s in t
        push!(res, uppercase(s))
    end
    res
end
```

JULIA

`res` is initialized with an empty array; each time through the loop, we append the next element. So `res` is another kind of accumulator.

An operation like `capitalizeall` is sometimes called a *map* because it “maps” a function (in this case `uppercase`) onto each of the elements in a sequence.

Another common operation is to select some of the elements from an array and return a subarray. For example, the following function takes an array of strings and returns an array that contains only the uppercase strings:

```
function onlyupper(t)
    res = []
    for s in t
        if s == uppercase(s)
            push!(res, s)
        end
    end
    res
end
```

JULIA

An operation like `onlyupper` is called a *filter* because it selects some of the elements and filters out the others.

Most common array operations can be expressed as a combination of map, filter and reduce.

## Dot Syntax

For every binary operator like `^`, there is a corresponding *dot operator* `.^` that is automatically defined to perform `^` element-by-element on arrays. For example, `[1, 2, 3] ^ 3` is not defined, but `[1, 2, 3] .^ 3` is defined as computing the elementwise result `[1^3, 2^3, 3^3]`:

```
julia> print([1, 2, 3] .^ 3)
[1, 8, 27]
```

JLCON

Any Julia function `f` can be applied elementwise to any array with the *dot syntax*. For example to capitalize an array of strings, we don't need a loop:

```
julia> t = uppercase(["abc", "def", "ghi"]);

julia> print(t)
["ABC", "DEF", "GHI"]
```

JLCON

This is an elegant way to create a map. The function `capitalizeall` can be implemented by a one-liner:

```
function capitalizeall(t)
    uppercase.(t)
end
```

JULIA

## Deleting (Inserting) Elements

There are several ways to delete elements from an array. If you know the index of the element you want, you can use `splice!`:

```
julia> t = ['a', 'b', 'c'];

julia> splice!(t, 2)
'b': ASCII/Unicode U+0062 (category Ll: Letter, lowercase)
julia> print(t)
['a', 'c']
```

JLCON



`splice!` modifies the array and returns the element that was removed.

`pop!` deletes and returns the last element:

```
julia> t = ['a', 'b', 'c'];  
  
julia> pop!(t)  
'c': ASCII/Unicode U+0063 (category Ll: Letter, lowercase)  
julia> print(t)  
['a', 'b']
```

JLCON

`popfirst!` deletes and returns the first element:

```
julia> t = ['a', 'b', 'c'];  
  
julia> popfirst!(t)  
'a': ASCII/Unicode U+0061 (category Ll: Letter, lowercase)  
julia> print(t)  
['b', 'c']
```

JLCON

The functions `pushfirst!` and `push!` insert an element at the beginning, respectively at the end of the array.

If you don't need the removed value, you can use the function `deleteat!`:

```
julia> t = ['a', 'b', 'c'];  
  
julia> print(deleteat!(t, 2))  
['a', 'c']
```

JLCON

The function `insert!` inserts an element at a given index:

```
julia> t = ['a', 'b', 'c'];  
  
julia> print(insert!(t, 2, 'x'))  
['a', 'x', 'b', 'c']
```

JLCON

## Arrays and Strings

A string is a sequence of characters and an array is a sequence of values, but an array of characters is not the same as a string. To convert from a string to an array of characters, you can use the function `collect`:

```
julia> t = collect("spam");  
  
julia> print(t)  
['s', 'p', 'a', 'm']
```

JLCON

The `collect` function breaks a string or another sequence into individual elements.

If you want to break a string into words, you can use the `split` function:

```
julia> t = split("pining for the fjords");

julia> print(t)
SubString{String}["pining", "for", "the", "fjords"]
```

An *optional argument* called a *delimiter* specifies which characters to use as word boundaries. The following example uses a hyphen as a delimiter:

```
julia> t = split("spam-spam-spam", '-');

julia> print(t)
SubString{String}["spam", "spam", "spam"]
```

`join` is the inverse of `split`. It takes an array of strings and concatenates the elements:

```
julia> t = ["pining", "for", "the", "fjords"];

julia> s = join(t, ' ')
"pining for the fjords"
```

In this case the delimiter is a space character. To concatenate strings without spaces, you don't specify a delimiter.

## Objects and Values

An *object* is something a variable can refer to. Until now, you could use “object” and “value” interchangeably.

If we run these assignment statements:

```
a = "banana"
b = "banana"
```

We know that `a` and `b` both refer to a string, but we don't know whether they refer to the *same* string. There are two possible states, shown in Figure 10-2.

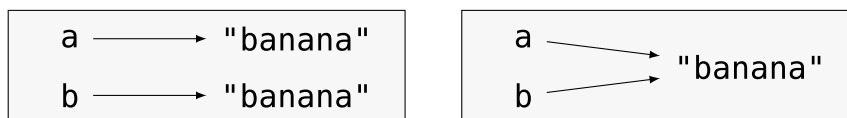


Figure 12. State diagrams.

In one case, `a` and `b` refer to two different objects that have the same value. In the second case, they refer to the same object.

To check whether two variables refer to the same object, you can use the `≡` (`\equiv` TAB) or `===` operator.

```
julia> a = "banana"
"banana"
julia> b = "banana"
"banana"
julia> a ≡ b
true
```

In this example, Julia only created one string object, and both `a` and `b` refer to it. But when you create two arrays, you get two objects:

```
julia> a = [1, 2, 3];  
  
julia> b = [1, 2, 3];  
  
julia> a == b  
false
```

JLCON

So the state diagram looks like State diagram.

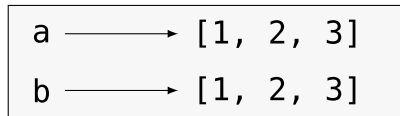


Figure 13. State diagram

In this case we would say that the two arrays are *equivalent*, because they have the same elements, but not *identical*, because they are not the same object. If two objects are identical, they are also equivalent, but if they are equivalent, they are not necessarily identical.

To be precise an object has a value. If you evaluate `[1, 2, 3]`, you get an array object whose value is a sequence of integers. If another array has the same elements, we say it has the same value, but it is not the same object.

## Aliasing

If `a` refers to an object and you assign `b = a`, then both variables refer to the same object:

```
julia> a = [1, 2, 3];  
  
julia> b = a;  
  
julia> b == a  
true
```

JLCON

The state diagram looks like State diagram.

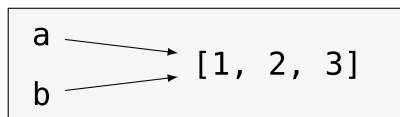


Figure 14. State diagram

The association of a variable with an object is called a *reference*. In this example, there are two references to the same object.

An object with more than one reference has more than one name, so we say that the object is *aliased*.

If the aliased object is mutable, changes made with one alias affect the other:

```
julia> b[1] = 42
42
julia> print(a)
[42, 2, 3]
```

JLCON

## WARNING

Although this behavior can be useful, it is error-prone. In general, it is safer to avoid aliasing when you are working with mutable objects.

For immutable objects like strings, aliasing is not as much of a problem. In this example:

```
a = "banana"
b = "banana"
```

JULIA

It almost never makes a difference whether `a` and `b` refer to the same string or not.

## Array Arguments

When you pass an array to a function, the function gets a reference to the array. If the function modifies the array, the caller sees the change. For example, `deletehead!` removes the first element from an array:

```
function deletehead!(t)
    popfirst!(t)
end
```

JULIA

Here's how it is used:

```
julia> letters = ['a', 'b', 'c'];

julia> deletehead!(letters);

julia> print(letters)
['b', 'c']
```

JLCON

The parameter `t` and the variable `letters` are aliases for the same object. The stack diagram looks like Stack diagram.

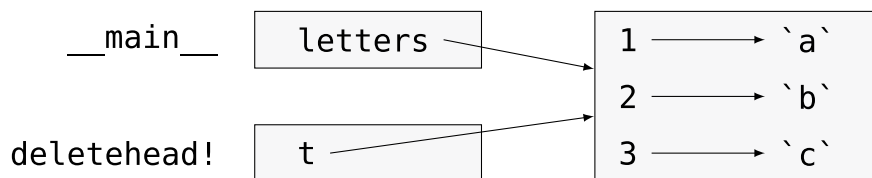


Figure 15. Stack diagram

Since the array is shared by two frames, I drew it between them.

It is important to distinguish between operations that modify arrays and operations that create new arrays. For example, `push!` modifies an array, but `vcat` creates a new array.

Here's an example using `push!` :

```
julia> t1 = [1, 2];

julia> t2 = push!(t1, 3);

julia> print(t1)
[1, 2, 3]
```

`t2` is an alias of `t1`.

Here's an example using `vcats`:

```
julia> t3 = vcat(t1, [4]);

julia> print(t1)
[1, 2, 3]
julia> print(t3)
[1, 2, 3, 4]
```

The result of `vcats` is a new array, and the original array is unchanged.

This difference is important when you write functions that are supposed to modify arrays.

For example, this function *does not* delete the head of a array:

```
function baddeletehead(t)
    t[2:end]          # WRONG!
end
```

The slice operator creates a new array and the assignment makes `t` refer to it, but that doesn't affect the caller.

```
julia> t4 = baddeletehead(t3);

julia> print(t3)
[1, 2, 3, 4]
julia> print(t4)
[2, 3, 4]
```

At the beginning of `baddeletehead`, `t` and `t3` refer to the same array. At the end, `t` refers to a new array, but `t3` still refers to the original, unmodified array.

An alternative is to write a function that creates and returns a new array. For example, `tail` returns all but the first element of an array:

```
function tail(t)
    t[2:end]
end
```

This function leaves the original array unmodified. Here's how it is used:

```
julia> letters = ['a', 'b', 'c'];

julia> rest = tail(letters);

julia> print(rest)
['b', 'c']
```

## Debugging

Careless use of arrays (and other mutable objects) can lead to long hours of debugging. Here are some common pitfalls and ways to avoid them:

- Most array functions modify the argument. This is the opposite of the string functions, which return a new string and leave the original alone.

If you are used to writing string code like this:

```
new_word = strip(word)
```

JULIA

It is tempting to write array code like this:

```
t2 = sort!(t1)
```

JULIA

Because `sort!` returns the modified original array `t1`, `t2` is an alias of `t1`.

### NOTE

Before using array functions and operators, you should read the documentation carefully and then test them in interactive mode.

- Pick an idiom and stick with it.

Part of the problem with arrays is that there are too many ways to do things. For example, to remove an element from an array, you can use `pop!`, `popfirst!`, `delete_at`, or even a slice assignment. To add an element, you can use `push!`, `pushfirst!`, `insert!` or `vcats`. Assuming that `t` is an array and `x` is an array element, these are correct:

```
insert!(t, 4, x)
push!(t, x)
append!(t, [x])
```

JULIA

And these are wrong:

```
insert!(t, 4, [x])      # WRONG!
push!(t, [x])           # WRONG!
vcats(t, [x])           # WRONG!
```

JULIA

- Make copies to avoid aliasing.

If you want to use a function like `sort!` that modifies the argument, but you need to keep the original array as well, you can make a copy:

```
julia> t = [3, 1, 2];  
  
julia> t2 = t[:];  
  
julia> sort!(t2);  
  
julia> print(t)  
[3, 1, 2]  
julia> print(t2)  
[1, 2, 3]
```

In this example you could also use the built-in function `sort`, which returns a new, sorted array and leaves the original alone:

```
julia> t2 = sort(t);  
  
julia> println(t)  
[3, 1, 2]  
julia> println(t2)  
[1, 2, 3]
```

## Glossary

### array

A sequence of values.

### element

One of the values in an array (or other sequence), also called items.

### nested array

An array that is an element of another array.

### accumulator

A variable used in a loop to add up or accumulate a result.

### augmented assignment

A statement that updates the value of a variable using an operator like `=`.

### dot operator

Binary operator that is applied element-by-element to arrays.

### dot syntax

Syntax used to apply a function elementwise to any array.

### reduce

A processing pattern that traverses a sequence and accumulates the elements into a single result.

### map

A processing pattern that traverses a sequence and performs an operation on each element.

**filter**

A processing pattern that traverses a sequence and selects the elements that satisfy some criterion.

**object**

Something a variable can refer to. An object has a type and a value.

**equivalent**

Having the same value.

**identical**

Being the same object (which implies equivalence).

**reference**

The association between a variable and its value.

**aliasing**

A circumstance where two or more variables refer to the same object.

**optional arguments**

arguments that are not required.

**delimiter**

A character or string used to indicate where a string should be split.

## Exercises

### Exercise 10-1

Write a function called `nestedsum` that takes an array of arrays of integers and adds up the elements from all of the nested arrays. For example:

```
julia> t = [[1, 2], [3], [4, 5, 6]];

julia> nestedsum(t)
21
```

JLCON

### Exercise 10-2

Write a function called `cumulsum` that takes an array of numbers and returns the cumulative sum; that is, a new array where the  $i$ th element is the sum of the first  $i + 1$  elements from the original array. For example:

```
julia> t = [1, 2, 3];

julia> print(cumulsum(t))
Any[1, 3, 6]
```

JLCON

### Exercise 10-3

Write a function called `interior` that takes an array and returns a new array that contains all but the first and last elements. For example:



```
julia> t = [1, 2, 3, 4];

julia> print(interior(t))
[2, 3]
```

### Exercise 10-4

Write a function called `interior!` that takes an array, modifies it by removing the first and last elements, and returns `nothing`. For example:

```
julia> t = [1, 2, 3, 4];

julia> interior!(t)

julia> print(t)
[2, 3]
```

### Exercise 10-5

Write a function called `issort` that takes an array as a parameter and returns `true` if the array is sorted in ascending order and `false` otherwise. For example:

```
julia> issort([1, 2, 2])
true
julia> issort(['b', 'a'])
false
```

### Exercise 10-6

Two words are anagrams if you can rearrange the letters from one to spell the other. Write a function called `isanagram` that takes two strings and returns `true` if they are anagrams.

### Exercise 10-7

Write a function called `hasduplicates` that takes an array and returns `true` if there is any element that appears more than once. It should not modify the original array.

### Exercise 10-8

This exercise pertains to the so-called Birthday Paradox, which you can read about at [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Birthday\\_paradox](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Birthday_paradox).

If there are 23 students in your class, what are the chances that two of you have the same birthday? You can estimate this probability by generating random samples of 23 birthdays and checking for matches.

#### TIP

You can generate random birthdays with `rand(1:365)`.

### Exercise 10-9

Write a function that reads the file `words.txt` and builds an array with one element per word. Write two versions of this function, one using `push!` and the other using the idiom `t = [t..., x]`. Which one takes longer to run? Why?

### Exercise 10-10

To check whether a word is in the word array, you could use the `∈` operator, but it would be slow because it searches through the words in order.

Because the words are in alphabetical order, we can speed things up with a bisection search (also known as binary search), which is similar to what you do when you look a word up in the dictionary. You start in the middle and check to see whether the word you are looking for comes before the word in the middle of the array. If so, you search the first half of the array the same way. Otherwise you search the second half.

Either way, you cut the remaining search space in half. If the word array has 113,809 words, it will take about 17 steps to find the word or conclude that it's not there.

Write a function called `inbisect` that takes a sorted array and a target value and returns `true` if the word is in the array and `false` if it's not.

### Exercise 10-11

Two words are a “reverse pair” if each is the reverse of the other. Write a program `reversepairs` that finds all the reverse pairs in the word array.

### Exercise 10-12

Two words “interlock” if taking alternating letters from each forms a new word. For example, “shoe” and “cold” interlock to form “schooled”.

Credit: This exercise is inspired by an example at <http://puzzlers.org>.

1. Write a program that finds all pairs of words that interlock.

#### TIP

Don't enumerate all pairs!

2. Can you find any words that are three-way interlocked; that is, every third letter forms a word, starting from the first, second or third?

## 11. Dictionaries

This chapter presents another built-in type called a dictionary. Dictionaries are one of Julia's best features; they are the building blocks of many efficient and elegant algorithms.

### A Dictionary Is a Mapping

A *dictionary* is like an array, but more general. In an array, the indices have to be integers; in a dictionary they can be (almost) any type.

A dictionary contains a collection of indices, which are called *keys*, and a collection of values. Each key is associated with a single value. The association of a key and a value is called a *key-value pair* or sometimes an item.

In mathematical language, a dictionary represents a *mapping* from keys to values, so you can also say that each key “maps to” a value. As an example, we'll build a dictionary that maps from English to Spanish words, so the keys and the values are all strings.

The function `Dict` creates a new dictionary with no items. Because `Dict` is the name of a built-in function, you should avoid using it as a variable name.

```
julia> eng2sp = Dict()  
Dict{Any,Any} with 0 entries
```

JLCON

The kind of dictionary is surrounded by curly braces: the keys are of type `Any` and also the values are of type `Any`.

The dictionary is empty. To add items to the dictionary, you can use square brackets:

```
julia> eng2sp["one"] = "uno";
```

JLCON

This line creates an item that maps from the key "one" to the value "uno". If we print the dictionary again, we see a key-value pair with an arrow "=>" between the key and value:

```
julia> eng2sp  
Dict{Any,Any} with 1 entry:  
"one" => "uno"
```

JLCON

This output format is also an input format. For example, you can create a new dictionary with three items:

```
julia> eng2sp = Dict("one" => "uno", "two" => "dos", "three" => "tres")  
Dict{String,String} with 3 entries:  
"two"  => "dos"  
"one"  => "uno"  
"three" => "tres"
```

JLCON

#### WARNING

The order of the key-value pairs might not be the same. If you type the same example on your computer, you might get a different result. In general, the order of items in a dictionary is unpredictable.

But that's not a problem because the elements of a dictionary are never indexed with integer indices. Instead, you use the keys to look up the corresponding values:

```
julia> eng2sp["two"]  
"dos"
```

JLCON

The key "two" always maps to the value "dos" so the order of the items doesn't matter.

If the key isn't in the dictionary, you get an exception:

```
julia> eng2sp["four"]  
ERROR: KeyError: key "four" not found
```

JLCON

The `length` function works on dictionaries; it returns the number of key-value pairs:

```
julia> length(eng2sp)  
3
```

JLCON

The function `keys` returns an array with the keys of the dictionary:

```
julia> ks = keys(eng2sp);  
  
julia> print(ks)  
["two", "one", "three"]
```

JLCON

Now you can use the `∈` operator to see whether something appears as a *key* in the dictionary:

```
julia> "one" ∈ ks  
true  
julia> "uno" ∈ ks  
false
```

JLCON

To see whether something appears as a value in a dictionary, you can use the function `values`, which returns a collection of values, and then use the `∈` operator:

```
julia> vs = values(eng2sp);  
  
julia> "uno" ∈ vs  
true
```

JLCON

The `∈` operator uses different algorithms for arrays and dictionaries. For arrays, it searches the elements of the array in order, as in Searching. As the array gets longer, the search time gets longer in direct proportion.

For dictionaries, Julia uses an algorithm called a *hashtable* that has a remarkable property: the `∈` operator takes about the same amount of time no matter how many items are in the dictionary.

## Dictionary as a Collection of Counters

Suppose you are given a string and you want to count how many times each letter appears. There are several ways you could do it:

- You could create 26 variables, one for each letter of the alphabet. Then you could traverse the string and, for each character, increment the corresponding counter, probably using a chained conditional.
- You could create an array with 26 elements. Then you could convert each character to a number (using the built-in function `Int`), use the number as an index into the array, and increment the appropriate counter.
- You could create a dictionary with characters as keys and counters as the corresponding values. The first time you see a character, you would add an item to the dictionary. After that you would increment the value of an existing item.

Each of these options performs the same computation, but each of them implements that computation in a different way.

An *implementation* is a way of performing a computation; some implementations are better than others. For example, an advantage of the dictionary implementation is that we don't have to know ahead of time which letters appear in the string and we only have to make room for the letters that do appear.

Here is what the code might look like:

```
function histogram(s)
    d = Dict{Char, Int}()
    for c in s
        if c ∉ keys(d)
            d[c] = 1
        else
            d[c] += 1
        end
    end
    d
end
```

JULIA

The name of the function is `histogram`, which is a statistical term for a collection of counters (or frequencies).

The first line of the function creates an empty dictionary. The `for` loop traverses the string. Each time through the loop, if the character `c` is not in the dictionary, we create a new item with key `c` and the initial value `1` (since we have seen this letter once). If `c` is already in the dictionary we increment `d[c]`.

Here's how it works:

```
julia> h = histogram("brontosaurus")
Dict{Any,Any} with 8 entries:
  'n' => 1
  's' => 2
  'a' => 1
  'r' => 2
  't' => 1
  'o' => 2
  'u' => 2
  'b' => 1
```

JLCON

The histogram indicates that the letters `a` and `b` appear once; `o` appears twice, and so on.

Dictionaries have a function called `get` that takes a key and a default value. If the key appears in the dictionary, `get` returns the corresponding value; otherwise it returns the default value. For example:

```
julia> h = histogram("a")
Dict{Any,Any} with 1 entry:
  'a' => 1
julia> get(h, 'a', 0)
1
julia> get(h, 'b', 0)
0
```

JLCON

#### TIP

As an exercise, use `get` to write `histogram` more concisely. You should be able to eliminate the `if` statement.

## Looping and Dictionaries

You can traverse the keys of the dictionary in a `for` statement. For example, `printhist` prints each key and the corresponding value:

```
function printhist(h)
    for c in keys(h)
        println(c, " ", h[c])
    end
end
```

JULIA

Here's what the output looks like:

```
julia> h = histogram("parrot");

julia> printhist(h)
a 1
r 2
p 1
o 1
t 1
```

JLCON

Again, the keys are in no particular order. To traverse the keys in sorted order, you can combine `sort` and `collect`:

```
julia> for c in sort(collect(keys(h)))
        println(c, " ", h[c])
    end

a 1
o 1
p 1
r 2
t 1
```

JLCON

## Reverse Lookup

Given a dictionary `d` and a key `k`, it is easy to find the corresponding value `v = d[k]`. This operation is called a *lookup*.

But what if you have `v` and you want to find `k`? You have two problems: first, there might be more than one key that maps to the value `v`. Depending on the application, you might be able to pick one, or you might have to make an array that contains all of them. Second, there is no simple syntax to do a *reverse lookup*; you have to search.

Here is a function that takes a value and returns the first key that maps to that value:

```
function reverselookup(d, v)
    for k in keys(d)
        if d[k] == v
            return k
        end
    end
    error("LookupError")
end
```

JULIA

This function is yet another example of the search pattern, but it uses a function we haven't seen before, `error`. The `error` function is used to produce an `ErrorException` that interrupts the normal flow of control. In this case it has the message `"LookupError"`, indicating that a key does not exist.

If we get to the end of the loop, that means `v` doesn't appear in the dictionary as a value, so we throw an exception.

Here is an example of a successful reverse lookup:

```
julia> h = histogram("parrot");

julia> key = reverselookup(h, 2)
'r': ASCII/Unicode U+0072 (category Ll: Letter, lowercase)
```

JLCON

And an unsuccessful one:

```
julia> key = reverselookup(h, 3)
ERROR: LookupError
```

JLCON

The effect when you generate an exception is the same as when Julia throws one: it prints a stacktrace and an error message.

#### WARNING

A reverse lookup is much slower than a forward lookup; if you have to do it often, or if the dictionary gets big, the performance of your program will suffer.

## Dictionaries and Arrays

Arrays can appear as values in a dictionary. For example, if you are given a dictionary that maps from letters to frequencies, you might want to invert it; that is, create a dictionary that maps from frequencies to letters. Since there might be several letters with the same frequency, each value in the inverted dictionary should be an array of letters.

Here is a function that inverts a dictionary:

```

function invertdict(d)
    inverse = Dict{<Any,Any>}()
    for key in keys(d)
        val = d[key]
        if val ∉ keys(inverse)
            inverse[val] = [key]
        else
            push!(inverse[val], key)
        end
    end
    inverse
end

```

Each time through the loop, `key` gets a key from `d` and `val` gets the corresponding value. If `val` is not in `inverse`, that means we haven't seen it before, so we create a new item and initialize it with a *singleton* (an array that contains a single element). Otherwise we have seen this value before, so we append the corresponding key to the array.

Here is an example:

```

julia> hist = histogram("parrot");

julia> inverse = invertdict(hist)
Dict{Any,Any} with 2 entries:
 2 => ['r']
 1 => ['a', 'p', 'o', 't']

```

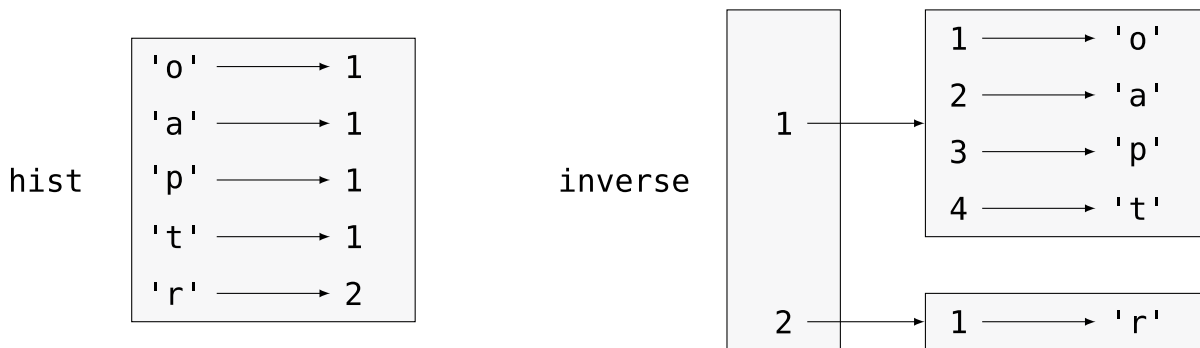


Figure 16. State diagram

State diagram is a state diagram showing `hist` and `inverse`. A dictionary is represented as a box with the key-value pairs inside. If the values are integers, floats or strings, I draw them inside the box, but I usually draw arrays outside the box, just to keep the diagram simple.

#### NOTE

I mentioned earlier that a dictionary is implemented using a hashtable and that means that the keys have to be *hashable*.

A *hash* is a function that takes a value (of any kind) and returns an integer. Dictionaries use these integers, called hash values, to store and look up key-value pairs.

## Memos

If you played with the `fibonacci` function from One More Example, you might have noticed that the bigger the argument you provide, the longer the function takes to run. Furthermore, the run time increases quickly.



To understand why, consider Call graph, which shows the *call graph* for `fibonacci` with `n = 4`:

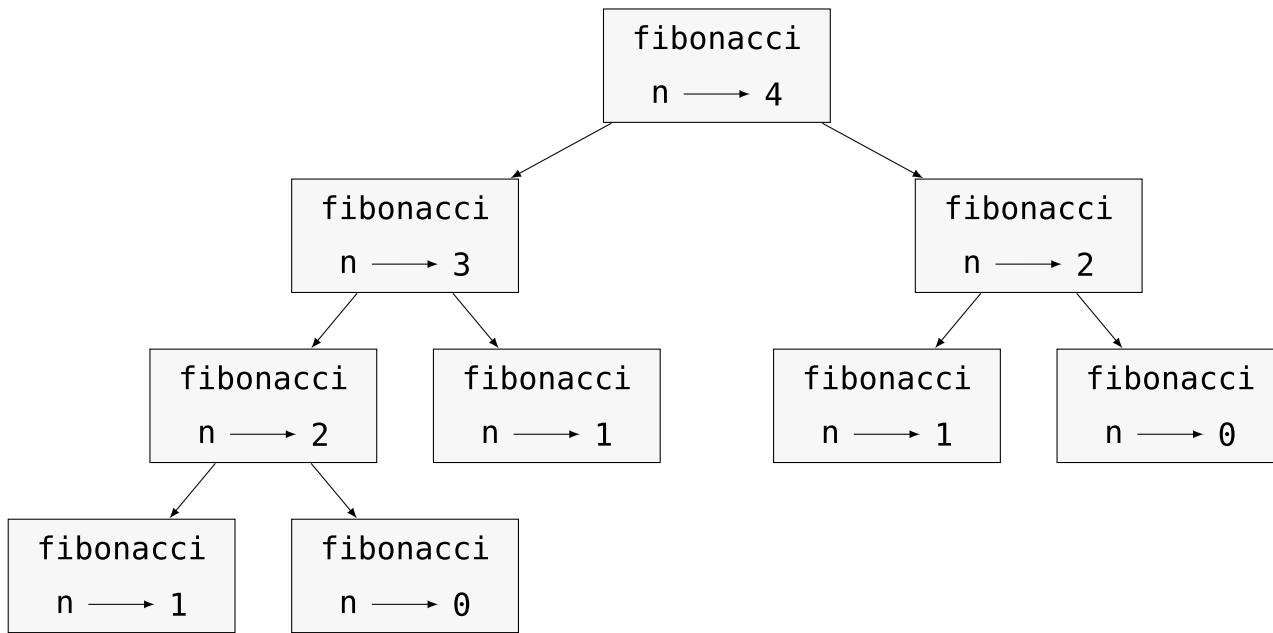


Figure 17. Call graph

A call graph shows a set of function frames, with lines connecting each frame to the frames of the functions it calls. At the top of the graph, `fibonacci` with `n = 4` calls `fibonacci` with `n = 3` and `n = 2`. In turn, `fibonacci` with `n = 3` calls `fibonacci` with `n = 2` and `n = 1`. And so on.

Count how many times `fibonacci(0)` and `fibonacci(1)` are called. This is an inefficient solution to the problem, and it gets worse as the argument gets bigger.

One solution is to keep track of values that have already been computed by storing them in a dictionary. A previously computed value that is stored for later use is called a *memo*. Here is a “memoized” version of `fibonacci`:

```
known = Dict{<int>,<int>}{0=>0, 1=>1}

function fibonacci(n)
    if n ∈ keys(known)
        return known[n]
    end
    res = fibonacci(n-1) + fibonacci(n-2)
    known[n] = res
    res
end
```

JULIA

`known` is a dictionary that keeps track of the Fibonacci numbers we already know. It starts with two items: `0` maps to `0` and `1` maps to `1`.

Whenever `fibonacci` is called, it checks `known`. If the result is already there, it can return immediately. Otherwise it has to compute the new value, add it to the dictionary, and return it.

If you run this version of `fibonacci` and compare it with the original, you will find that it is much faster.

## Global Variables

In the previous example, `known` is created outside the function, so it belongs to the special frame called `__main__`. Variables in `__main__` are sometimes called *global* because they can be accessed from any function. Unlike local variables, which disappear when their function ends, global variables persist from one function call to the next.

It is common to use global variables for *flags*; that is, boolean variables that indicate (“flag”) whether a condition is true. For example, some programs use a flag named `verbose` to control the level of detail in the output:

```
verbose = true

function example1()
    if verbose
        println("Running example1")
    end
end
```

JULIA

If you try to reassign a global variable, you might be surprised. The following example is supposed to keep track of whether the function has been called:

```
been_called = false

function example2()
    been_called = true    # WRONG
end
```

JULIA

But if you run it you will see that the value of `been_called` doesn’t change. The problem is that `example2` creates a new local variable named `been_called`. The local variable goes away when the function ends, and has no effect on the global variable.

To reassign a global variable inside a function you have to *declare* the global variable before you use it:

```
been_called = false

function example2()
    global been_called
    been_called = true
end
```

JULIA

The *global statement* tells the interpreter something like, “In this function, when I say `been_called`, I mean the global variable; don’t create a local one.”

Here’s an example that tries to update a global variable:

```
count = 0

function example3()
    count = count + 1    # WRONG
end
```

JULIA

If you run it you get:

```
julia> example3()
ERROR: UndefVarError: count not defined
```

Julia assumes that `count` is local, and under that assumption you are reading it before writing it. The solution, again, is to declare `count` global.

```
count = 0

function example3()
    global count
    count += 1
end
```

If a global variable refers to a mutable value, you can modify the value without declaring the variable:

```
known = Dict{<int, int>}(0=>0, 1=>1)

function example4()
    known[2] = 1
end
```

So you can add, remove and replace elements of a global array or dictionary, but if you want to reassign the variable, you have to declare it:

```
known = Dict{<int, int>}(0=>0, 1=>1)

function example5()
    global known
    known = Dict{<int, int>}()
end
```

## WARNING

Global variables can be useful, but if you have a lot of them, and you modify them frequently, they can make programs hard to debug and perform badly.

## Debugging

As you work with bigger datasets it can become unwieldy to debug by printing and checking the output by hand. Here are some suggestions for debugging large datasets:

- Scale down the input:

If possible, reduce the size of the dataset. For example if the program reads a text file, start with just the first 10 lines, or with the smallest example you can find. You can either edit the files themselves, or (better) modify the program so it reads only the first  $n$  lines.

If there is an error, you can reduce  $n$  to the smallest value that manifests the error, and then increase it gradually as you find and correct errors.

- Check summaries and types:

Instead of printing and checking the entire dataset, consider printing summaries of the data: for example, the number of items in a dictionary or the total of an array of numbers.

A common cause of runtime errors is a value that is not the right type. For debugging this kind of error, it is often enough to print the type of a value.

- Write self-checks:

Sometimes you can write code to check for errors automatically. For example, if you are computing the average of an array of numbers, you could check that the result is not greater than the largest element in the array or less than the smallest. This is called a “sanity check” because it detects results that are “insane”.

Another kind of check compares the results of two different computations to see if they are consistent. This is called a “consistency check”.

- Format the output:

Formatting debugging output can make it easier to spot an error. We saw an example in Debugging.

Again, time you spend building scaffolding can reduce the time you spend debugging.

## Glossary

### **mapping**

A relationship in which each element of one set corresponds to an element of another set.

### **dictionary**

A mapping from keys to their corresponding values.

### **key-value pair**

The representation of the mapping from a key to a value.

### **item**

In a dictionary, another name for a key-value pair.

### **key**

An object that appears in a dictionary as the first part of a key-value pair.

### **value**

An object that appears in a dictionary as the second part of a key-value pair. This is more specific than our previous use of the word “value”.

### **implementation**

A way of performing a computation.

### **hashtable**

The algorithm used to implement Julia dictionaries.

### **hash function**

A function used by a hashtable to compute the location for a key.

### **hashable**

A type that has a hash function. Immutable types like integers, floats and strings are hashable; mutable types like arrays and dictionaries are not.

**lookup**

A dictionary operation that takes a key and finds the corresponding value.

**reverse lookup**

A dictionary operation that takes a value and finds one or more keys that map to it.

**singleton**

An array (or other sequence) with a single element.

**call graph**

A diagram that shows every frame created during the execution of a program, with an arrow from each caller to each callee.

**memo**

A computed value stored to avoid unnecessary future computation.

**global variable**

A variable defined outside a function. Global variables can be accessed from any function.

**global statement**

A statement that declares a variable name global.

**flag**

A boolean variable used to indicate whether a condition is true.

**declaration**

A statement like `global` that tells the interpreter something about a variable.

**constant global variable**

A global variable that can not be reassigned.

## Exercises

### Exercise 11-1

Write a function that reads the words in *words.txt* and stores them as keys in a dictionary. It doesn't matter what the values are. Then you can use the `∈` operator as a fast way to check whether a string is in the dictionary.

If you did Exercise 10-10, you can compare the speed of this implementation with the array `∈` operator and the bisection search.

### Exercise 11-2

Read the documentation of the dictionary function `get!` and use it to write a more concise version of `invertdict`.

### Exercise 11-3

Memoize the Ackermann function from Exercise 6-2 and see if memoization makes it possible to evaluate the function with bigger arguments.

### Exercise 11-4

If you did Exercise 10-7, you already have a function named `hasduplicates` that takes an array as a parameter and returns `true` if there is any object that appears more than once in the array.

Use a dictionary to write a faster, simpler version of `hasduplicates`.

### Exercise 11-5

Two words are “rotate pairs” if you can rotate one of them and get the other (see `rotateword` in Exercise 8-5).

Write a program that reads a word array and finds all the rotate pairs.

### Exercise 11-6

Here’s another Puzzler from Car Talk (<https://www.cartalk.com/puzzler/browse>):

“*This was sent in by a fellow named Dan O’Leary. He came upon a common one-syllable, five-letter word recently that has the following unique property. When you remove the first letter, the remaining letters form a homophone of the original word, that is a word that sounds exactly the same. Replace the first letter, that is, put it back and remove the second letter and the result is yet another homophone of the original word. And the question is, what’s the word?*

*Now I’m going to give you an example that doesn’t work. Let’s look at the five-letter word, ‘wrack.’ W-R-A-C-K, you know like to ‘wrack with pain.’ If I remove the first letter, I am left with a four-letter word, ‘R-A-C-K.’ As in, ‘Holy cow, did you see the rack on that buck! It must have been a nine-pointer!’ It’s a perfect homophone. If you put the ‘w’ back, and remove the ‘r,’ instead, you’re left with the word, ‘wack,’ which is a real word, it’s just not a homophone of the other two words.*

*But there is, however, at least one word that Dan and we know of, which will yield two homophones if you remove either of the first two letters to make two, new four-letter words. The question is, what’s the word?*

You can use the dictionary from Exercise 11-1 to check whether a string is in the word array.

To check whether two words are homophones, you can use the CMU Pronouncing Dictionary. You can download it from <http://www.speech.cs.cmu.edu/cgi-bin/cmudict>.

Write a program that lists all the words that solve the Puzzler.

## 12. Tuples

This chapter presents one more built-in type, the tuple, and then shows how arrays, dictionaries, and tuples work together. I also present a useful feature for variable-length argument arrays, the gather and scatter operators.

One note: there is no consensus on how to pronounce “tuple”. Some people say “tuh-ple”, which rhymes with “supple”. But in the context of programming, most people say “too-ple”, which rhymes with “quadruple”.

### Tuples Are Immutable

A tuple is a sequence of values. The values can be any type, and they are indexed by integers, so in that respect tuples are a lot like arrays. The important difference is that tuples are immutable.

Syntactically, a tuple is a comma-separated list of values:

```
julia> t = 'a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'
('a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e')
```

JLCON

Although it is not necessary, it is common to enclose tuples in parentheses:

```
julia> t = ('a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e')
('a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e')
```

JLCON

To create a tuple with a single element, you have to include a final comma:

```
julia> t1 = ('a',)
('a',)
julia> typeof(t1)
Tuple{Char}
```

JLCON

#### WARNING

A value in parentheses is not a tuple:

```
julia> t2 = ('a')
'a': ASCII/Unicode U+0061 (category Ll: Letter, lowercase)
julia> typeof(t2)
Char
```

JLCON

Another way to create a tuple is the built-in function `tuple`. With no argument, it creates an empty tuple:

```
julia> tuple()
()
```

JLCON

If multiple arguments are provided, the result is a tuple with the given arguments:

```
julia> t3 = tuple(1, 'a', pi)
(1, 'a', π = 3.1415926535897...)
```

JLCON

Because tuple is the name of a built-in function, you should avoid using it as a variable name.

Most array operators also work on tuples. The bracket operator indexes an element:

```
julia> t = ('a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e');  
  
julia> t[1]  
'a': ASCII/Unicode U+0061 (category Ll: Letter, lowercase)
```

JLCON

And the slice operator selects a range of elements:

```
julia> t[2:4]  
('b', 'c', 'd')
```

JLCON

But if you try to modify one of the elements of the tuple, you get an error:

```
julia> t[0] = 'A'  
ERROR: MethodError: no method matching setindex!{::NTuple{5,Char}, ::Char, ::Int64}
```

JLCON

Because tuples are immutable, you can't modify the elements.

The relational operators work with tuples and other sequences; Julia starts by comparing the first element from each sequence. If they are equal, it goes on to the next elements, and so on, until it finds elements that differ. Subsequent elements are not considered (even if they are really big).

```
julia> (0, 1, 2) < (0, 3, 4)  
true  
julia> (0, 1, 2000000) < (0, 3, 4)  
true
```

JLCON

## Tuple Assignment

It is often useful to swap the values of two variables. With conventional assignments, you have to use a temporary variable. For example, to swap a and b:

```
temp = a  
a = b  
b = temp
```

JULIA

This solution is cumbersome; tuple assignment is more elegant:

```
a, b = b, a
```

JULIA

The left side is a tuple of variables; the right side is a tuple of expressions. Each value is assigned to its respective variable. All the expressions on the right side are evaluated before any of the assignments.

The number of variables on the left and the number of values on the right have to be the same:



```
julia> a, b, c = 1, 2
ERROR: BoundsError: attempt to access (1, 2)
at index [3]
```

More generally, the right side can be any kind of sequence (string, array or tuple). For example, to split an email address into a user name and a domain, you could write:

```
julia> addr = "julius.caesar@rome"
"julius.caesar@rome"
julia> uname, domain = split(addr, '@');
```

The return value from `split` is an array with two elements; the first element is assigned to `uname`, the second to `domain`.

```
julia> uname
"julius.caesar"
julia> domain
"rome"
```

## Tuples as Return Values

Strictly speaking, a function can only return one value, but if the value is a tuple, the effect is the same as returning multiple values. For example, if you want to divide two integers and compute the quotient and remainder, it is inefficient to compute `x ÷ y` and then `x % y`. It is better to compute them both at the same time.

The built-in function `divrem` takes two arguments and returns a tuple of two values, the quotient and remainder. You can store the result as a tuple:

```
julia> t = divrem(7, 3)
(2, 1)
```

Or use tuple assignment to store the elements separately:

```
julia> quot, rem = divrem(7, 3);

julia> println(quot)
2
julia> println(rem)
1
```

Here is an example of a function that returns a tuple:

```
function minmax(t)
    minimum(t), maximum(t)
end
```

`maximum` and `minimum` are built-in functions that find the largest and smallest elements of a sequence. `minmax` computes both and returns a tuple of two values.

## Variable-length Argument Tuples

Functions can take a variable number of arguments. A parameter name that ends with `...` *gathers* arguments into a tuple. For example, `printall` takes any number of arguments and prints them:

```
function printall(args...)
    println(args)
end
```

JULIA

The gather parameter can have any name you like, but `args` is conventional. Here's how the function works:

```
julia> printall(1, 2.0, '3')
(1, 2.0, '3')
```

JLCON

The complement of gather is *scatter*. If you have a sequence of values and you want to pass it to a function as multiple arguments, you can use the `...` operator. For example, `divrem` takes exactly two arguments; it doesn't work with a tuple:

```
julia> t = (7, 3);

julia> divrem(t)
ERROR: MethodError: no method matching divrem(::Tuple{Int64,Int64})
```

JLCON

But if you scatter the tuple, it works:

```
julia> divrem(t...)
(2, 1)
```

JLCON

Many of the built-in functions use variable-length argument tuples. For example, `max` and `min` can take any number of arguments:

```
julia> max(1, 2, 3)
3
```

JLCON

But `sum` does not:

```
julia> sum(1, 2, 3)
ERROR: MethodError: no method matching sum(::Int64, ::Int64, ::Int64)
```

JLCON

### TIP

As an exercise, write a function called `sumall` that takes any number of arguments and returns their sum.

## Arrays and Tuples

`zip` is a built-in function that takes two or more sequences and returns an array of tuples where each tuple contains one element from each sequence. The name of the function refers to a zipper, which joins and interleaves two rows of teeth.

This example zips a string and an array:

```
julia> s = "abc";

julia> t = [1, 2, 3];

julia> zip(s, t)
Base.Iterators.Zip{String,Array{Int64,1}}("abc", [1, 2, 3])
```

The result is a *zip object* that knows how to iterate through the pairs. The most common use of `zip` is in a `for` loop:

```
julia> for pair in zip(s, t)
        println(pair)
    end
('a', 1)
('b', 2)
('c', 3)
```

A zip object is a kind of *iterator*, which is any object that iterates through a sequence. Iterators are similar to arrays in some ways, but unlike arrays, you can't use an index to select an element from an iterator.

If you want to use array operators and functions, you can use a zip object to make an array:

```
julia> collect(zip(s, t))
3-element Array{Tuple{Char,Int64},1}:
 ('a', 1)
 ('b', 2)
 ('c', 3)
```

The result is an array of tuples; in this example, each tuple contains a character from the string and the corresponding element from the array.

If the sequences are not the same length, the result has the length of the shorter one.

```
julia> collect(zip("Anne", "Elk"))
3-element Array{Tuple{Char,Char},1}:
 ('A', 'E')
 ('n', 'l')
 ('n', 'k')
```

You can use tuple assignment in a `for` loop to traverse an array of tuples:

```
julia> t = [('a', 1), ('b', 2), ('c', 3)];

julia> for (letter, number) in t
        println(number, " ", letter)
    end
1 a
2 b
3 c
```

Each time through the loop, Julia selects the next tuple in the array and assigns the elements to `letter` and `number`. The parentheses around `(letter, number)` are compulsory.

If you combine `zip`, `for` and tuple assignment, you get a useful idiom for traversing two (or more) sequences at the same time. For example, `hasmatch` takes two sequences, `t1` and `t2`, and returns `true` if there is an index `i` such that `t1[i] == t2[i]`:

```
function hasmatch(t1, t2)
    for (x, y) in zip(t1, t2)
        if x == y
            return true
        end
    end
    false
end
```

JULIA

If you need to traverse the elements of a sequence and their indices, you can use the built-in function `enumerate`:

```
julia> for (index, element) in enumerate("abc")
    println(index, " ", element)
end
1 a
2 b
3 c
```

JLCON

The result from `enumerate` is an `enumerate` object, which iterates a sequence of pairs; each pair contains an index (starting from 1) and an element from the given sequence.

## Dictionaries and Tuples

Dictionaries can be used as iterators that iterates the key-value pairs. You can use it in a `for` loop like this:

```
julia> d = Dict{'a'=>1, 'b'=>2, 'c'=>3};

julia> for (key, value) in d
    println(key, " ", value)
end
a 1
c 3
b 2
```

JLCON

As you should expect from a dictionary, the items are in no particular order.

Going in the other direction, you can use an array of tuples to initialize a new dictionary:

```
julia> t = [('a', 1), ('c', 3), ('b', 2)];

julia> d = Dict{t}
Dict{Char,Int64} with 3 entries:
 'a' => 1
 'c' => 3
 'b' => 2
```

JLCON

Combining `Dict` with `zip` yields a concise way to create a dictionary:

```
julia> d = Dict{Char, Int64}(zip("abc", 1:3))
Dict{Char,Int64} with 3 entries:
 'a' => 1
 'c' => 3
 'b' => 2
```

It is common to use tuples as keys in dictionaries. For example, a telephone directory might map from last-name, first-name pairs to telephone numbers. Assuming that we have defined `last`, `first` and `number`, we could write:

```
directory[last, first] = number
```

The expression in brackets is a tuple. We could use tuple assignment to traverse this dictionary.

```
for ((last, first), number) in directory
    println(first, " ", last, " ", number)
end
```

This loop traverses the key-value pairs in `directory`, which are tuples. It assigns the elements of the key in each tuple to `last` and `first`, and the value to `number`, then prints the name and corresponding telephone number.

There are two ways to represent tuples in a state diagram. The more detailed version shows the indices and elements just as they appear in an array. For example, the tuple `("Cleese", "John")` would appear as in State diagram.

1	→	"Cleese"
2	→	"John"

*Figure 18. State diagram*

But in a larger diagram you might want to leave out the details. For example, a diagram of the telephone directory might appear as in State diagram.

<code>("Cleese", "John")</code>	→	<code>"08700 100 222"</code>
<code>("Chapman", "Graham")</code>	→	<code>"08700 100 222"</code>
<code>("Idle", "Eric")</code>	→	<code>"08700 100 222"</code>
<code>("Gilliam", "Terry")</code>	→	<code>"08700 100 222"</code>
<code>("Jones", "Terry")</code>	→	<code>"08700 100 222"</code>
<code>("Palin", "Michael")</code>	→	<code>"08700 100 222"</code>

*Figure 19. State diagram*

Here the tuples are shown using Julia syntax as a graphical shorthand. The telephone number in the diagram is the complaints line for the BBC, so please don't call it.

## Sequences of Sequences

I have focused on arrays of tuples, but almost all of the examples in this chapter also work with arrays of arrays, tuples of tuples, and tuples of arrays. To avoid enumerating the possible combinations, it is sometimes easier to talk about sequences of sequences.

In many contexts, the different kinds of sequences (strings, arrays and tuples) can be used interchangeably. So how should you choose one over the others?

To start with the obvious, strings are more limited than other sequences because the elements have to be characters. They are also immutable. If you need the ability to change the characters in a string (as opposed to creating a new string), you might want to use an array of characters instead.

Arrays are more common than tuples, mostly because they are mutable. But there are a few cases where you might prefer tuples:

- In some contexts, like a return statement, it is syntactically simpler to create a tuple than an array.
- If you are passing a sequence as an argument to a function, using tuples reduces the potential for unexpected behavior due to aliasing.

Because tuples are immutable, they don't provide function like `sort!` and `reverse!`, which modify existing arrays. But Julia provides the built-in function `sort`, which takes an array and returns a new array with the same elements in sorted order, and `reverse`, which takes any sequence and returns a sequence of the same type in reverse order.

## Debugging

Arrays, dictionaries and tuples are examples of *data structures*; in this lecture we are starting to see compound data structures, like arrays of tuples, or dictionaries that contain tuples as keys and arrays as values. Compound data structures are useful, but they are prone to what I call *shape errors*; that is, errors caused when a data structure has the wrong type, size, or structure. For example, if you are expecting an array with one integer and I give you a plain old integer (not in an array), it won't work.

Julia allows to attach a type to elements of a sequence. How this is done, is detailed in . Specifying the type eliminates a lot of shape errors.

## Glossary

### **tuple**

An immutable sequence of elements.

### **tuple assignment**

An assignment with a sequence on the right side and a tuple of variables on the left. The right side is evaluated and then its elements are assigned to the variables on the left.

### **gather**

The operation of assembling a variable-length argument tuple.

### **scatter**

The operation of treating a sequence as a list of arguments.

### **zip object**

The result of calling a built-in function `zip`; an object that iterates through a sequence of tuples.

## iterator

An object that can iterate through a sequence, but which does not provide array operators and functions.

## data structure

A collection of related values, often organized in array, dictionaries, tuples, etc.

## shape error

An error caused because a value has the wrong shape; that is, the wrong type or size.

## Exercises

### Exercise 12-1

Write a function called `most_frequent` that takes a string and prints the letters in decreasing order of frequency. Find text samples from several different languages and see how letter frequency varies between languages. Compare your results with the tables at [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Letter\\_frequencies](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Letter_frequencies).

### Exercise 12-2

More anagrams!

1. Write a program that reads a word list from a file (see Reading Word Lists) and prints all the sets of words that are anagrams.

Here is an example of what the output might look like:

```
["deltas", "desalt", "lasted", "salted", "slated", "staled"]
["retainers", "ternaries"]
["generating", "greatening"]
["resmelts", "smelters", "termless"]
```

JULIA

#### TIP

You might want to build a dictionary that maps from a collection of letters to a list of words that can be spelled with those letters. The question is, how can you represent the collection of letters in a way that can be used as a key?

2. Modify the previous program so that it prints the longest list of anagrams first, followed by the second longest, and so on.
3. In Scrabble a “bingo” is when you play all seven tiles in your rack, along with a letter on the board, to form an eight-letter word. What collection of 8 letters forms the most possible bingos?

#### TIP

There are seven.

### Exercise 12-3

Two words form a “metathesis pair” if you can transform one into the other by swapping two letters; for example, “converse” and “conserve”. Write a program that finds all of the metathesis pairs in the dictionary.

#### TIP

Don’t test all pairs of words, and don’t test all possible swaps.

Credit: This exercise is inspired by an example at <http://puzzlers.org>.

## Exercise 12-4

Here's another Car Talk Puzzler (<https://www.cartalk.com/puzzler/browse>):

“What is the longest English word, that remains a valid English word, as you remove its letters one at a time?

*Now, letters can be removed from either end, or the middle, but you can't rearrange any of the letters. Every time you drop a letter, you wind up with another English word. If you do that, you're eventually going to wind up with one letter and that too is going to be an English word—one that's found in the dictionary. I want to know what's the longest word and how many letters does it have?*

*I'm going to give you a little modest example: Sprite. Ok? You start off with sprite, you take a letter off, one from the interior of the word, take the r away, and we're left with the word spite, then we take the e off the end, we're left with spit, we take the s off, we're left with pit, it, and I.*

Write a program to find all words that can be reduced in this way, and then find the longest one.

### TIP

This exercise is a little more challenging than most, so here are some suggestions:

1. You might want to write a function that takes a word and computes a list of all the words that can be formed by removing one letter. These are the “children” of the word.
2. Recursively, a word is reducible if any of its children are reducible. As a base case, you can consider the empty string reducible.
3. The wordlist I provided, *words.txt*, doesn't contain single letter words. So you might want to add “I”, “a”, and the empty string.
4. To improve the performance of your program, you might want to memoize the words that are known to be reducible.



## 13. Case Study: Data Structure Selection

At this point you have learned about Julia's core data structures, and you have seen some of the algorithms that use them.

This chapter presents a case study with exercises that let you think about choosing data structures and practice using them.

### Word Frequency Analysis

As usual, you should at least attempt the exercises before you read my solutions.

#### Exercise 13-1

Write a program that reads a file, breaks each line into words, strips whitespace and punctuation from the words, and converts them to lowercase.

##### TIP

The function `isletter` tests whether a character is alphabetic.

#### Exercise 13-2

Go to Project Gutenberg (<https://gutenberg.org>) and download your favorite out-of-copyright book in plain text format.

Modify your program from the previous exercise to read the book you downloaded, skip over the header information at the beginning of the file, and process the rest of the words as before.

Then modify the program to count the total number of words in the book, and the number of times each word is used.

Print the number of different words used in the book. Compare different books by different authors, written in different eras. Which author uses the most extensive vocabulary?

#### Exercise 13-3

Modify the program from the previous exercise to print the 20 most frequently used words in the book.

#### Exercise 13-4

Modify the previous program to read a word list and then print all the words in the book that are not in the word list. How many of them are typos? How many of them are common words that should be in the word list, and how many of them are really obscure?

### Random Numbers

Given the same inputs, most computer programs generate the same outputs every time, so they are said to be *deterministic*. Determinism is usually a good thing, since we expect the same calculation to yield the same result. For some applications, though, we want the computer to be unpredictable. Games are an obvious example, but there are more.

Making a program truly nondeterministic turns out to be difficult, but there are ways to make it at least seem nondeterministic. One of them is to use algorithms that generate *pseudorandom* numbers. Pseudorandom numbers are not truly random because they are generated by a deterministic computation, but just by looking at the numbers it is all but impossible to distinguish them from random.

The function `rand` returns a random float between `0.0` and `1.0` (including `0.0` but not `1.0`). Each time you call `rand`, you get the next number in a long series. To see a sample, run this loop:

```
for i in 1:10
    x = rand()
    println(x)
end
```

The function `rand` can take an iterator or array as argument and returns a random element:

```
for i in 1:10
    x = rand(1:6)
    print(x, " ")
end
```

### Exercise 13-5

Write a function named `choosefromhist` that takes a histogram as defined in Dictionary as a Collection of Counters and returns a random value from the histogram, chosen with probability in proportion to frequency. For example, for this histogram:

```
julia> t = ['a', 'a', 'b'];

julia> histogram(t)
Dict{Any,Any} with 2 entries:
 'a' => 2
 'b' => 1
```

your function should return `a` with probability  $\frac{2}{3}$  and `b` with probability  $\frac{1}{3}$ .

## Word Histogram

You should attempt the previous exercises before you go on. You will also need <https://github.com/BenLauwens/ThinkJulia.jl/data/emma.txt>.

Here is a program that reads a file and builds a histogram of the words in the file:

```
function processfile(filename)
    hist = Dict{<div>
    for line in eachline(filename)
        processline(line, hist)
    end
    hist
end;

function processline(line, hist)
    line = replace(line, '-' => ' ')
    for word in split(line)
        word = string(filter(isletter, [word...]))
        word = lowercase(word)
        hist[word] = get!(hist, word, 0) + 1
    end
end;
```

```
hist = processfile("emma.txt");
```

This program reads *emma.txt*, which contains the text of *Emma* by Jane Austen.

`processfile` loops through the lines of the file, passing them one at a time to `processline`. The histogram `hist` is being used as an accumulator.

`processline` uses the function `replace` to replace hyphens with spaces before using `split` to break the line into an array of strings. It traverses the array of words and uses `filter`, `isletter` and `lowercase` to remove punctuation and convert to lower case. (It is a shorthand to say that strings are “converted”; remember that strings are immutable, so a function like `lowercase` return new strings.)

Finally, `processline` updates the histogram by creating a new item or incrementing an existing one.

To count the total number of words in the file, we can add up the frequencies in the histogram:

```
function totalwords(hist)
    sum(values(hist))
end
```

JULIA

The number of different words is just the number of items in the dictionary:

```
function differentwords(hist)
    length(hist)
end
```

JULIA

Here is some code to print the results:

```
julia> println("Total number of words: ", totalwords(hist))
Total number of words: 162742

julia> println("Number of different words: ", differentwords(hist))
Number of different words: 7380
```

JLCON

## Most Common Words

To find the most common words, we can make an array of tuples, where each tuple contains a word and its frequency, and sort it. The following function takes a histogram and returns an array of word-frequency tuples:

```
function mostcommon(hist)
    t = []
    for (key, value) in hist
        push!(t, (value, key))
    end
    reverse(sort(t))
end
```

JULIA

In each tuple, the frequency appears first, so the resulting array is sorted by frequency. Here is a loop that prints the ten most common words:

```
t = mostcommon(hist)
println("The most common words are:")
for (freq, word) in t[1:10]
    println(word, "\t", freq)
end
```

I use a tab character (`\t`) as a “separator”, rather than a space, so the second column is lined up. Here are the results from *Emma*:

```
The most common words are:
to      5295
the     5266
and     4931
of      4339
i       3191
a       3155
it      2546
her     2483
was     2400
she     2364
```

#### TIP

This code can be simplified using the `rev` keyword argument of the `sort` function. You can read about it at <https://docs.julialang.org/en/stable/base/sort/#Base.sort>.

## Optional Parameters

We have seen built-in functions that take optional arguments. It is possible to write programmer-defined functions with optional arguments, too. For example, here is a function that prints the most common words in a histogram:

```
function printmostcommon(hist, num=10)
    t = mostcommon(hist)
    println("The most common words are: ")
    for (freq, word) in t[1:num]
        println(word, "\t", freq)
    end
end
```

The first parameter is required; the second is optional. The *default value* of `num` is `10`.

If you only provide one argument:

```
printmostcommon(hist)
```

`num` gets the default value. If you provide two arguments:

```
printmostcommon(hist, 20)
```

`num` gets the value of the argument instead. In other words, the optional argument *overrides* the default value.

If a function has both required and optional parameters, all the required parameters have to come first, followed by the optional ones.

## Dictionary Subtraction

Finding the words from the book that are not in the word list from `words.txt` is a problem you might recognize as set subtraction; that is, we want to find all the words from one set (the words in the book) that are not in the other (the words in the list).

`subtract` takes dictionaries `d1` and `d2` and returns a new dictionary that contains all the keys from `d1` that are not in `d2`. Since we don't really care about the values, we set them all to `nothing`.

```
function subtract(d1, d2)
    res = Dict{<
    for key in keys(d1)
        if key ∉ keys(d2)
            res[key] = nothing
        end
    end
    res
end
```

JULIA

To find the words in the book that are not in `words.txt`, we can use `processfile` to build a histogram for `words.txt`, and then `subtract`:

```
words = processfile("words.txt")
diff = subtract(hist, words)

println("Words in the book that aren't in the word list:")
for word in keys(diff)
    print(word, " ")
end
```

JULIA

Here are some of the results from *Emma*:

```
Words in the book that aren't in the word list:
outtree quicksighted outwardly adelaide rencontre jeffereys unreserved dioxons between ...
```

Some of these words are names and possessives. Others, like “rencontre”, are no longer in common use. But a few are common words that should really be in the list!

## Exercise 13-6

Julia provides a data structure called `Set` that provides many common set operations. You can read about them in *Collections and Data Structures*, or read the documentation at <https://docs.julialang.org/en/stable/base/collections/#Set-Like-Collections-1>.

Write a program that uses set subtraction to find words in the book that are not in the word list.

## Random Words

To choose a random word from the histogram, the simplest algorithm is to build an array with multiple copies of each word, according to the observed frequency, and then choose from the array:

```
function randomword(h)
    t = []
    for (word, freq) in h
        for i in 1:freq
            push!(t, word)
        end
    end
    rand(t)
end
```

JULIA

This algorithm works, but it is not very efficient; each time you choose a random word, it rebuilds the array, which is as big as the original book. An obvious improvement is to build the array once and then make multiple selections, but the array is still big.

An alternative is:

1. Use `keys` to get an array of the words in the book.
2. Build an array that contains the cumulative sum of the word frequencies (see Exercise 10-2). The last item in this array is the total number of words in the book,  $n$ .
3. Choose a random number from 1 to  $n$ . Use a bisection search (see Exercise 10-10) to find the index where the random number would be inserted in the cumulative sum.
4. Use the index to find the corresponding word in the word array.

### Exercise 13-7

Write a program that uses this algorithm to choose a random word from the book.

## Markov Analysis

If you choose words from the book at random, you can get a sense of the vocabulary, but you probably won't get a sentence:

```
this the small regard harriet which knightley's it most things
```

A series of random words seldom makes sense because there is no relationship between successive words. For example, in a real sentence you would expect an article like “the” to be followed by an adjective or a noun, and probably not a verb or adverb.

One way to measure these kinds of relationships is Markov analysis, which characterizes, for a given sequence of words, the probability of the words that might come next. For example, the song *Eric, the Half a Bee* begins:

Half a bee, philosophically,  
Must, ipso facto, half not be.  
But half the bee has got to be  
Vis a vis, its entity. D'you see?

But can a bee be said to be  
Or not to be an entire bee  
When half the bee is not a bee  
Due to some ancient injury?

In this text, the phrase “half the” is always followed by the word “bee”, but the phrase “the bee” might be followed by either “has” or “is”.

The result of Markov analysis is a mapping from each prefix (like “half the” and “the bee”) to all possible suffixes (like “has” and “is”).

Given this mapping, you can generate a random text by starting with any prefix and choosing at random from the possible suffixes. Next, you can combine the end of the prefix and the new suffix to form the next prefix, and repeat.

For example, if you start with the prefix “Half a”, then the next word has to be “bee”, because the prefix only appears once in the text. The next prefix is “a bee”, so the next suffix might be “philosophically”, “be” or “due”.

In this example the length of the prefix is always two, but you can do Markov analysis with any prefix length.

### Exercise 13-8

Markov analysis:

1. Write a program to read a text from a file and perform Markov analysis. The result should be a dictionary that maps from prefixes to a collection of possible suffixes. The collection might be a list, tuple, or dictionary; it is up to you to make an appropriate choice. You can test your program with prefix length two, but you should write the program in a way that makes it easy to try other lengths.
2. Add a function to the previous program to generate random text based on the Markov analysis. Here is an example from Emma with prefix length 2:

“*“He was very clever, be it sweetness or be angry, ashamed or only amused, at such a stroke. She had never thought of Hannah till you were never meant for me?” “I cannot make speeches, Emma.” he soon cut it all himself.*”

For this example, I left the punctuation attached to the words. The result is almost syntactically correct, but not quite. Semantically, it almost makes sense, but not quite.

What happens if you increase the prefix length? Does the random text make more sense?

3. Once your program is working, you might want to try a mash-up: if you combine text from two or more books, the random text you generate will blend the vocabulary and phrases from the sources in interesting ways.

Credit: This case study is based on an example from Kernighan and Pike, The Practice of Programming, Addison-Wesley, 1999.

## Data Structures

Using Markov analysis to generate random text is fun, but there is also a point to this exercise: data structure selection. In your solution to the previous exercises, you had to choose:

- How to represent the prefixes.
- How to represent the collection of possible suffixes.
- How to represent the mapping from each prefix to the collection of possible suffixes.

The last one is easy: a dictionary is the obvious choice for a mapping from keys to corresponding values.

For the prefixes, the most obvious options are string, array of strings, or tuple of strings.

For the suffixes, one option is an array; another is a histogram (dictionary).

How should you choose? The first step is to think about the operations you will need to implement for each data structure. For the prefixes, we need to be able to remove words from the beginning and add to the end. For example, if the current prefix is “Half a”, and the next word is “bee”, you need to be able to form the next prefix, “a bee”.

Your first choice might be an array, since it is easy to add and remove elements.

For the collection of suffixes, the operations we need to perform include adding a new suffix (or increasing the frequency of an existing one), and choosing a random suffix.

Adding a new suffix is equally easy for the array implementation or the histogram. Choosing a random element from a array is easy; choosing from a histogram is harder to do efficiently (see Exercise 13-7).

So far we have been talking mostly about ease of implementation, but there are other factors to consider in choosing data structures. One is run time. Sometimes there is a theoretical reason to expect one data structure to be faster than other; for example, I mentioned that the `in` operator is faster for dictionaries than for lists, at least when the number of elements is large.

But often you don’t know ahead of time which implementation will be faster. One option is to implement both of them and see which is better. This approach is called *benchmarking*. A practical alternative is to choose the data structure that is easiest to implement, and then see if it is fast enough for the intended application. If so, there is no need to go on. If not, there are tools, like the `Profile` module, that can identify the places in a program that take the most time.

The other factor to consider is storage space. For example, using a histogram for the collection of suffixes might take less space because you only have to store each word once, no matter how many times it appears in the text. In some cases, saving space can also make your program run faster, and in the extreme, your program might not run at all if you run out of memory. But for many applications, space is a secondary consideration after run time.

One final thought: in this discussion, I have implied that we should use one data structure for both analysis and generation. But since these are separate phases, it would also be possible to use one structure for analysis and then convert to another structure for generation. This would be a net win if the time saved during generation exceeded the time spent in conversion.



# Debugging

When you are debugging a program, and especially if you are working on a hard bug, there are five things to try:

## Reading

Examine your code, read it back to yourself, and check that it says what you meant to say.

## Running

Experiment by making changes and running different versions. Often if you display the right thing at the right place in the program, the problem becomes obvious, but sometimes you have to build scaffolding.

## Ruminating

Take some time to think! What kind of error is it: syntax, runtime, or semantic? What information can you get from the error messages, or from the output of the program? What kind of error could cause the problem you're seeing? What did you change last, before the problem appeared?

## Rubberducking

If you explain the problem to someone else, you sometimes find the answer before you finish asking the question. Often you don't need the other person; you could just talk to a rubber duck. And that's the origin of the well-known strategy called rubber duck debugging. I am not making this up; see [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rubber\\_duck\\_debugging](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rubber_duck_debugging).

## Retreating

At some point, the best thing to do is back off, undoing recent changes, until you get back to a program that works and that you understand. Then you can start rebuilding.

Beginning programmers sometimes get stuck on one of these activities and forget the others. Each activity comes with its own failure mode.

For example, reading your code might help if the problem is a typographical error, but not if the problem is a conceptual misunderstanding. If you don't understand what your program does, you can read it 100 times and never see the error, because the error is in your head.

Running experiments can help, especially if you run small, simple tests. But if you run experiments without thinking or reading your code, you might fall into a pattern I call "random walk programming", which is the process of making random changes until the program does the right thing. Needless to say, random walk programming can take a long time.

You have to take time to think. Debugging is like an experimental science. You should have at least one hypothesis about what the problem is. If there are two or more possibilities, try to think of a test that would eliminate one of them.

But even the best debugging techniques will fail if there are too many errors, or if the code you are trying to fix is too big and complicated. Sometimes the best option is to retreat, simplifying the program until you get to something that works and that you understand.

Beginning programmers are often reluctant to retreat because they can't stand to delete a line of code (even if it's wrong). If it makes you feel better, copy your program into another file before you start stripping it down. Then you can copy the pieces back one at a time.

Finding a hard bug requires reading, running, ruminating, and sometimes retreating. If you get stuck on one of these activities, try the others.

## Glossary

### **deterministic**

Pertaining to a program that does the same thing each time it runs, given the same inputs.

### **pseudorandom**

Pertaining to a sequence of numbers that appears to be random, but is generated by a deterministic program.

### **default value**

The value given to an optional parameter if no argument is provided.

### **override**

To replace a default value with an argument.

### **benchmarking**

The process of choosing between data structures by implementing alternatives and testing them on a sample of the possible inputs.

### **rubber duck debugging**

Debugging by explaining your problem to an inanimate object such as a rubber duck. Articulating the problem can help you solve it, even if the rubber duck doesn't know Julia.

## Exercises

### Exercise 13-9

The “rank” of a word is its position in an array of words sorted by frequency: the most common word has rank 1, the second most common has rank 2, etc.

Zipf's law describes a relationship between the ranks and frequencies of words in natural languages ([https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zipf's\\_law](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zipf's_law)). Specifically, it predicts that the frequency,  $f$ , of the word with rank  $r$  is:

$$f = cr^{-s}$$

where  $s$  and  $c$  are parameters that depend on the language and the text. If you take the logarithm of both sides of this equation, you get:

$$\log f = \log c - s \log r$$

So if you plot  $\log f$  versus  $\log r$ , you should get a straight line with slope  $-s$  and intercept  $\log c$ .

Write a program that reads a text from a file, counts word frequencies, and prints one line for each word, in descending order of frequency, with  $\log f$  and  $\log r$ .

Install a plotting library:

```
pkg> add Plots
```

JLCON

Its usage is very easy:

```
using Plots  
x = 1:10  
y = x.^2  
plot(x, y)
```

Use the `Plots` library to plot the results and check whether they form a straight line.

## 14. Files

This chapter introduces the idea of “persistent” programs that keep data in permanent storage, and shows how to use different kinds of permanent storage, like files and databases.

### Persistence

Most of the programs we have seen so far are transient in the sense that they run for a short time and produce some output, but when they end, their data disappears. If you run the program again, it starts with a clean slate.

Other programs are *persistent*: they run for a long time (or all the time); they keep at least some of their data in permanent storage (a hard drive, for example); and if they shut down and restart, they pick up where they left off.

Examples of persistent programs are operating systems, which run pretty much whenever a computer is on, and web servers, which run all the time, waiting for requests to come in on the network.

One of the simplest ways for programs to maintain their data is by reading and writing *text files*. We have already seen programs that read text files; in this chapter we will see programs that write them.

An alternative is to store the state of the program in a database. In this chapter I will also present how to use a simple database.

### Reading and Writing

A text file is a sequence of characters stored on a permanent medium like a hard drive, flash memory, or CD-ROM. We saw how to open and read a file in Reading Word Lists.

To write a file, you have to open it with mode `"w"` as a second parameter:

```
julia> fout = open("output.txt", "w")
IOStream(<file output.txt>)
```

JLCON

If the file already exists, opening it in write mode clears out the old data and starts fresh, so be careful! If the file doesn't exist, a new one is created. `open` returns a file object and the `write` function puts data into the file.

```
julia> line1 = "This here's the wattle,\n";

julia> write(fout, line1)
24
```

JLCON

The return value is the number of characters that were written. The file object keeps track of where it is, so if you call `write` again, it adds the new data to the end of the file.

```
julia> line2 = "the emblem of our land.\n";

julia> write(fout, line2)
24
```

JLCON

When you are done writing, you should close the file.

```
julia> close(fout)
```

JLCON

If you don't close the file, it gets closed for you when the program ends.

## Formatting

The argument of `write` has to be a string, so if we want to put other values in a file, we have to convert them to strings. The easiest way to do that is with `string` or string interpolation:

```
julia> fout = open("output.txt", "w")
IOStream(<file output.txt>)
julia> write(fout, string(150))
3
```

JLCON

An alternative is to use the `println` family of functions.

```
julia> camels = 42
42
julia> println(fout, "I have spotted $camels camels.")
```

JLCON

### TIP

A more powerful alternative is the `@printf` macro that prints using a C style format specification string, which you can read about at <https://docs.julialang.org/en/stable/stdlib/Printf/>

## Filenames and Paths

Files are organized into *directories* (also called “folders”). Every running program has a “current directory”, which is the default directory for most operations. For example, when you open a file for reading, Julia looks for it in the current directory.

The function `pwd` returns the name of the current directory:

```
julia> cwd = pwd()
"/home/dinsdale"
```

JLCON

`cwd` stands for “current working directory”. The result in this example is `/home/dinsdale`, which is the home directory of a user named `dinsdale`.

A string like `"/home/dinsdale"` that identifies a file or directory is called a *path*.

A simple filename, like `memo.txt` is also considered a path, but it is a *relative path* because it relates to the current directory. If the current directory is `/home/dinsdale`, the filename `memo.txt` would refer to `/home/dinsdale/memo.txt`.

A path that begins with `/` does not depend on the current directory; it is called an *absolute path*. To find the absolute path to a file, you can use `abspath`:

```
julia> abspath("memo.txt")
"/home/dinsdale/memo.txt"
```

JLCON

Julia provides other functions for working with filenames and paths. For example, `ispath` checks whether a file or directory exists:

```
julia> ispath("memo.txt")
true
```

JLCON

If it exists, `isdir` checks whether it's a directory:

```
julia> isdir("memo.txt")
false
julia> isdir("/home/dinsdale")
true
```

JLCON

Similarly, `isfile` checks whether it's a file.

`readdir` returns a list of the files (and other directories) in the given directory:

```
julia> readdir(cwd)
3-element Array{String,1}:
"memo.txt"
"music"
"photos"
```

JLCON

To demonstrate these functions, the following example “walks” through a directory, prints the names of all the files, and calls itself recursively on all the directories.

```
function walk(dirname)
    for name in readdir(dirname)
        path = joinpath(dirname, name)
        if isfile(path)
            println(path)
        else
            walk(path)
        end
    end
end
```

JULIA

`joinpath` takes a directory and a file name and joins them into a complete path.

#### TIP

Julia provides a function called `walkdir` (see <https://docs.julialang.org/en/stable/base/file/#Base.Filesystem.walkdir>) that is similar to this one but more versatile. As an exercise, read the documentation and use it to print the names of the files in a given directory and its subdirectories.

## Catching Exceptions

A lot of things can go wrong when you try to read and write files. If you try to open a file that doesn't exist, you get a `SystemError`:

```
julia> fin = open("bad_file")
ERROR: SystemError: opening file bad_file: No such file or directory
```

JLCON

If you don't have permission to access a file:

```
julia> fout = open("/etc/passwd", "w")  
ERROR: SystemError: opening file /etc/passwd: Permission denied
```

JLCON

To avoid these errors, you could use functions like `ispath` and `isfile`, but it would take a lot of time and code to check all the possibilities.

It is better to go ahead and try—and deal with problems if they happen—which is exactly what the `try` statement does. The syntax is similar to an `if` statement:

```
try  
    fin = open("bad_file.txt")  
catch exc  
    println("Something went wrong: $exc")  
end
```

JULIA

Julia starts by executing the `try` clause. If all goes well, it skips the `catch` clause and proceeds. If an exception occurs, it jumps out of the `try` clause and runs the `catch` clause.

Handling an exception with a `try` statement is called *catching* an exception. In this example, the except clause prints an error message that is not very helpful. In general, catching an exception gives you a chance to fix the problem, or try again, or at least end the program gracefully.

In code that performs state changes or uses resources like files, there is typically clean-up work (such as closing files) that needs to be done when the code is finished. Exceptions potentially complicate this task, since they can cause a block of code to exit before reaching its normal end. The `finally` keyword provides a way to run some code when a given block of code exits, regardless of how it exits:

```
f = open("output.txt")  
try  
    line = readline(f)  
    println(line)  
finally  
    close(f)  
end
```

JULIA

The function `close` will always be executed.

## Databases

A *database* is a file that is organized for storing data. Many databases are organized like a dictionary in the sense that they map from keys to values. The biggest difference between a database and a dictionary is that the database is on disk (or other permanent storage), so it persists after the program ends.

ThinkJulia provides an interface to `GDBM` for creating and updating database files. As an example, I'll create a database that contains captions for image files.

Opening a database is similar to opening other files:

```
julia> using ThinkJulia

julia> db = DBM("captions", "c")
DBM(<captions>)
```

JLCON

The mode "c" means that the database should be created if it doesn't already exist. The result is a database object that can be used (for most operations) like a dictionary.

When you create a new item, `GDBM` updates the database file:

```
julia> db["cleese.png"] = "Photo of John Cleese."
"Photo of John Cleese."
```

JLCON

When you access one of the items, `GDBM` reads the file:

```
julia> db["cleese.png"]
"Photo of John Cleese."
```

JLCON

If you make another assignment to an existing key, `GDBM` replaces the old value:

```
julia> db["cleese.png"] = "Photo of John Cleese doing a silly walk."
"Photo of John Cleese doing a silly walk."
julia> db["cleese.png"]
"Photo of John Cleese doing a silly walk."
```

JLCON

Some functions having a dictionary as argument, like `keys` and `values`, don't work with database objects. But iteration with a `for` loop works:

```
for (key, value) in db
    println(key, ": ", value)
end
```

JULIA

As with other files, you should close the database when you are done:

```
julia> close(db)
```

JLCON

## Serialization

A limitation of `GDBM` is that the keys and the values have to be strings or byte arrays. If you try to use any other type, you get an error.

The functions `serialize` and `deserialize` can help. They translate almost any type of object into a byte array (an `iobuffer`) suitable for storage in a database, and then translates byte arrays back into objects:



```
julia> using Serialization

julia> io = IOBuffer();

julia> t = [1, 2, 3];

julia> serialize(io, t)
24
julia> print(take!(io))
UInt8[0x37, 0x4a, 0x4c, 0x07, 0x04, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x15, 0x00, 0x08, 0xe2, 0x01, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
0x00, 0x00, 0x02, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x03, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00]
```

The format isn't obvious to human readers; it is meant to be easy for Julia to interpret. `deserialize` reconstitutes the object:

```
julia> io = IOBuffer();

julia> t1 = [1, 2, 3];

julia> serialize(io, t1)
24
julia> s = take!(io);

julia> t2 = deserialize(IOBuffer(s));

julia> print(t2)
[1, 2, 3]
```

`serialize` and `deserialize` write to and read from a `iobuffer` object which represents an in-memory I/O stream. The function `take!` fetches the contents of the `iobuffer` as a byte array and resets the `iobuffer` to its initial state.

Although the new object has the same value as the old, it is not (in general) the same object:

```
julia> t1 == t2
true
julia> t1 === t2
false
```

In other words, serialization and then deserialization has the same effect as copying the object.

You can use this to store non-strings in a database.

#### NOTE

In fact, this combination is so common that it has been encapsulated in a package called `JLD2` (see <https://github.com/simonster/JLD2.jl>).

## Command Objects

Most operating systems provide a command-line interface, also known as a *shell*. Shells usually provide commands to navigate the file system and launch applications. For example, in Unix you can change directories with `cd`, display the contents of a directory with `ls`, and launch a web browser by typing (for example) `firefox`.

Any program that you can launch from the shell can also be launched from Julia using a *command object*:

```
julia> cmd = `echo hello`  
`echo hello`
```

JLCON

Backticks are used to delimit the command.

The function `run` executes the command:

```
julia> run(cmd);  
hello
```

JLCON

The `hello` is the output of the `echo` command, sent to `STDOUT`. The `run` function itself returns a process object, and throws an `ErrorException` if the external command fails to run successfully.

If you want to read the output of the external command, `read` can be used instead:

```
julia> a = read(cmd, String)  
"hello\n"
```

JLCON

For example, most Unix systems provide a command called `md5sum` or `md5` that reads the contents of a file and computes a “checksum”. You can read about MD5 at <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Md5>. This command provides an efficient way to check whether two files have the same contents. The probability that different contents yield the same checksum is very small (that is, unlikely to happen before the universe collapses).

You can use a command object to run `md5` from Julia and get the result:

```
julia> filename = "output.txt"  
"output.txt"  
julia> cmd = `md5 $filename`  
`md5 output.txt`  
julia> res = read(cmd, String)  
"MD5 (output.txt) = d41d8cd98f00b204e9800998ecf8427e\n"
```

JLCON

## Modules

Any file that contains Julia code can be imported as a module. For example, suppose you have a file named `"wc.jl"` with the following code:

```
function linecount(filename)  
    count = 0  
    for line in eachline(filename)  
        count += 1  
    end  
    count  
end  
  
print(linecount("wc.jl"))
```

JULIA

If you run this program, it reads itself and prints the number of lines in the file, which is 9. You can also include it like this:

```
julia> Base.include(Main, "wc.jl")
```

9

JLCON

The first argument of `include` is a module. The input source file is evaluated in the scope of that module. The prefix `Base` is mandatory in this case. Without the prefix `include` has only one argument, the filename, and the file is evaluated in the scope of the active module. `Main` corresponds to the `__main__` frame.

Modules in Julia are separate variable workspaces, i.e. they introduce a new global scope. They are delimited syntactically, inside `module ... end`. Modules allow you to create top-level definitions without worrying about name conflicts when your code is used together with somebody else's. Within a module, you can control which names from other modules are visible (via `+import+ing`), and specify which of your names are intended to be public (via `+export+ing`).

```
module LineCount
    export linecount

    function linecount(filename)
        count = 0
        for line in eachline(filename)
            count += 1
        end
        count
    end
end
```

JULIA

The module `LineCount` object provides `linecount`:

```
julia> using LineCount
```

```
julia> linecount("wc.jl")
11
```

JULIA

#### TIP

As an exercise, type this example into a file named `wc.jl`, include it into the REPL and enter `using LineCount`.

#### WARNING

If you import a module that has already been imported, Julia does nothing. It does not re-read the file, even if it has changed.

If you want to reload a module, you have to restart the REPL. A package `Revise` exists that can keep your sessions running longer (see <https://github.com/timholly/Revise.jl>).

## Debugging

When you are reading and writing files, you might run into problems with whitespace. These errors can be hard to debug because spaces, tabs and newlines are normally invisible:

```
julia> s = "1 2\t 3\n 4";
```

JLCON

```
julia> println(s)
```

```
1 2      3
4
```

The built-in function `repr` can help. It takes any object as an argument and returns a string representation of the object.

```
julia> repr(s)
```

JLCON

```
"\"1 2\\t 3\\n 4\""
```

This can be helpful for debugging.

One other problem you might run into is that different systems use different characters to indicate the end of a line. Some systems use a newline, represented `\n`. Others use a return character, represented `\r`. Some use both. If you move files between different systems, these inconsistencies can cause problems.

For most systems, there are applications to convert from one format to another. You can find them (and read more about this issue) at <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newline>. Or, of course, you could write one yourself.

## Glossary

### **persistent**

Pertaining to a program that runs indefinitely and keeps at least some of its data in permanent storage.

### **text file**

A sequence of characters stored in permanent storage like a hard drive.

### **directory**

A named collection of files, also called a folder.

### **path**

A string that identifies a file.

### **relative path**

A path that starts from the current directory.

### **absolute path**

A path that starts from the topmost directory in the file system.

### **catch**

To prevent an exception from terminating a program using the `try ... catch ... finally` statements.

### **database**

A file whose contents are organized like a dictionary with keys that correspond to values.

### **shell**

A program that allows users to type commands and then executes them by starting other programs.

## command object

An object that represents a shell command, allowing a Julia program to run commands and read the results.

## Exercises

### Exercise 14-1

Write a function called `sed` that takes as arguments a pattern string, a replacement string, and two filenames; it should read the first file and write the contents into the second file (creating it if necessary). If the pattern string appears anywhere in the file, it should be replaced with the replacement string.

If an error occurs while opening, reading, writing or closing files, your program should catch the exception, print an error message, and exit.

### Exercise 14-2

If you have done Exercise 12-2, you'll see that a dictionary is created that maps from a sorted string of letters to the list of words that can be spelled with those letters. For example, "opst" maps to the list ["opts", "post", "pots", "spot", "stop", "tops"].

Write a module that imports `anagramsets` and provides two new functions: `storeanagrams` should store the anagram dictionary using `JLD2`; `readanagrams` should look up a word and return a list of its anagrams.

### Exercise 14-3

In a large collection of MP3 files, there may be more than one copy of the same song, stored in different directories or with different file names. The goal of this exercise is to search for duplicates.

1. Write a program that searches a directory and all of its subdirectories, recursively, and returns a list of complete paths for all files with a given suffix (like `.mp3`).
2. To recognize duplicates, you can use `md5sum` or `md5` to compute a "checksum" for each files. If two files have the same checksum, they probably have the same contents.
3. To double-check, you can use the Unix command `diff`.

## 15. Structs and Objects

At this point you know how to use functions to organize code and built-in types to organize data. The next step is to learn how to build your own types to organize both code and data. This is a big topic; it will take a few chapters to get there.

### Composite Types

We have used many of Julia's built-in types; now we are going to define a new type. As an example, we will create a type called `Point` that represents a point in two-dimensional space.

In mathematical notation, points are often written in parentheses with a comma separating the coordinates. For example,  $(0, 0)$  represents the origin, and  $(x, y)$  represents the point  $x$  units to the right and  $y$  units up from the origin.

There are several ways we might represent points in Julia:

- We could store the coordinates separately in two variables, `x` and `y`.
- We could store the coordinates as elements in a list or tuple.
- We could create a new type to represent points as objects.

Creating a new type is more complicated than the other options, but it has advantages that will be apparent soon.

A programmer-defined *composite type* is also called a *struct*. The `struct` definition for a point looks like this:

```
struct Point
    x
    y
end
```

JULIA

The header indicates that the new struct is called `Point`. The body defines the *attributes* or *fields* of the struct. The `Point` struct has two fields: `x` and `y`. As a noun, “AT-trib-ute” is pronounced with emphasis on the first syllable, as opposed to “a-TRIB-ute”, which is a verb.

Defining a type named `Point` creates a datatype object:

```
julia> typeof(Point)
DataType
```

JLCON

A struct is like a factory for creating objects. To create a point, you call `Point` as if it were a function having as arguments the values of the fields. When `Point` is used as a function, it is called a *constructor*.

```
julia> p = Point(3.0, 4.0)
Point{Float64, Float64}
```

JLCON

The return value is a reference to a point object, which we assign to `p`.

Creating a new object is called *instantiation*, and the object is an *instance* of the type.

When you print an instance, Julia tells you what type it belongs to and what the values of the attributes are.

Every object is an instance of some type, so “object” and “instance” are interchangeable. But in this chapter I use “instance” to indicate that I am talking about a programmer-defined type.

A state diagram that shows an object and its fields is called an *object diagram*; see Object diagram.

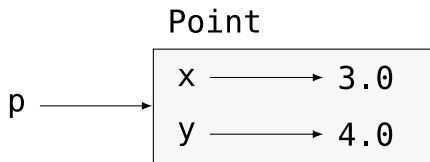


Figure 20. Object diagram

## Structs are Immutable

You can get the values of the fields using `.` notation:

```
julia> x = p.x
3.0
julia> p.y
4.0
```

JLCON

The expression `p.x` means, “Go to the object `p` refers to and get the value of `x`.” In the example, we assign that value to a variable named `x`. There is no conflict between the variable `x` and the field `x`.

You can use dot notation as part of any expression. For example:

```
julia> distance = sqrt(p.x^2 + p.y^2)
5.0
```

JLCON

Structs are however by default immutable, after construction the fields can not change value:

```
julia> p.y = 1.0
ERROR: type Point is immutable
```

JLCON

This may seem odd at first, but it has several advantages:

- It can be more efficient.
- It is not possible to violate the invariants provided by the type’s constructors (see later).
- Code using immutable objects can be easier to reason about.

## Mutable Structs

Where required, mutable composite types can be declared with the keyword `mutable struct`. Here is the definition of a mutable point:

```
mutable struct MPoint
    x
    y
end
```

JULIA

You can assign values to an instance of a mutable struct using dot notation:

```
julia> blank = MPoint(0.0, 0.0)
MPoint{Float64}(0.0, 0.0)
julia> blank.x = 3.0
3.0
julia> blank.y = 4.0
4.0
```

JLCON

You can pass an instance as an argument in the usual way. For example:

```
function printpoint(p)
    println("$(p.x), $(p.y)")
end
```

JULIA

`printpoint` takes a point as an argument and displays it in mathematical notation. To invoke it, you can pass `p` as an argument:

```
julia> printpoint(blank)
(3.0, 4.0)
```

JLCON

#### TIP

As an exercise, write a function called `distancebetweenpoints` that takes two points as arguments and returns the distance between them.

## Rectangles

Sometimes it is obvious what the fields of an object should be, but other times you have to make decisions. For example, imagine you are designing a type to represent rectangles. What fields would you use to specify the location and size of a rectangle? You can ignore angle; to keep things simple, assume that the rectangle is either vertical or horizontal.

There are at least two possibilities:

- You could specify one corner of the rectangle (or the center), the width, and the height.
- You could specify two opposing corners.

At this point it is hard to say whether either is better than the other, so we'll implement the first one, just as an example.

```
"""
Represents a rectangle.

fields: width, height, corner.
"""
struct Rectangle
    width
    height
    corner
end
```

JULIA

The docstring lists the fields: width and height are numbers; corner is a point object that specifies the lower-left corner.



To represent a rectangle, you have to instantiate a rectangle object:

```
julia> origin = MPoint(0.0, 0.0)
MPoint(0.0, 0.0)
julia> box = Rectangle(100.0, 200.0, origin)
Rectangle(100.0, 200.0, MPoint(0.0, 0.0))
```

JLCON

Object diagram shows the state of this object. An object that is a field of another object is *embedded*. Because the `corner` attribute refers to a mutable object, the latter is drawn outside the rectangle object.

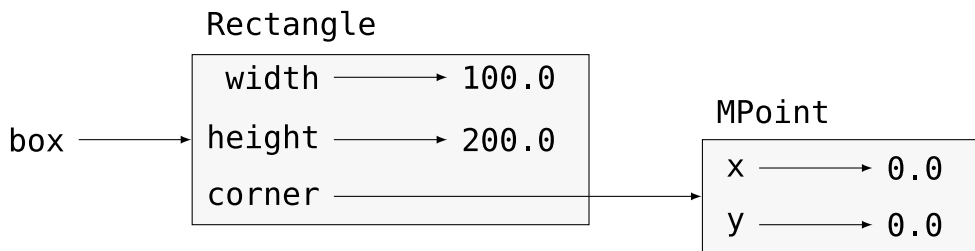


Figure 21. Object diagram

## Instances as Return Values

Functions can return instances. For example, `findcenter` takes a rectangle as an argument and returns a point that contains the coordinates of the center of the rectangle:

```
function findcenter(rect)
    Point(rect.corner.x + rect.width / 2, rect.corner.y + rect.height / 2)
end
```

JULIA

The expression `rect.corner.x` means, “Go to the object `rect` refers to and select the field named `corner` ; then go to that object and select the field named `x` .”

Here is an example that passes `box` as an argument and assigns the resulting point to `center` :

```
julia> center = findcenter(box)
Point(50.0, 100.0)
```

JLCON

## Instances as Arguments

If a mutable struct object is passed to a function as an argument, the function can modify the fields of the object. For example, `movepoint!` takes a mutable point object and two numbers, `dx` and `dy` , and adds the numbers to respectively the `x` and the `y` attribute of the point:

```
function movepoint!(p, dx, dy)
    p.x += dx
    p.y += dy
    nothing
end
```

JULIA

Here is an example that demonstrates the effect:

```
julia> origin = MPoint(0.0,0.0)
MPoint(0.0, 0.0)
julia> movepoint!(origin, 1.0, 2.0)

julia> origin
MPoint(1.0, 2.0)
```

JLCON

Inside the function, `p` is an alias for `origin`, so when the function modifies `p`, `origin` changes.

Passing an immutable point object to `movepoint!` causes an error:

```
julia> movepoint!(p, 1.0, 2.0)
ERROR: type is immutable
```

JLCON

You can however modify the value of a mutable attribute of an immutable object. For example, `moverectangle!` has as arguments a rectangle object and two numbers, `dx` and `dy`, and uses `movepoint!` to move the corner of the rectangle:

```
function moverectangle!(rect, dx, dy)
    movepoint!(rect.corner, dx, dy)
end
```

JULIA

Now `p` in `movepoint!` is an alias for `rect.corner`, so when `p` is modified, `rect.corner` changes also:

```
julia> box
Rectangle(100.0, 200.0, MPoint(0.0, 0.0))
julia> moverectangle!(box, 1.0, 2.0)

julia> box
Rectangle(100.0, 200.0, MPoint(1.0, 2.0))
```

JLCON

## WARNING

Attention you cannot reassign a mutable attribute of an immutable object:

```
julia> box.corner = MPoint(1.0, 2.0)
ERROR: type Rectangle is immutable
```

JLCON

## Copying

Aliasing can make a program difficult to read because changes in one place might have unexpected effects in another place. It is hard to keep track of all the variables that might refer to a given object.

Copying an object is often an alternative to aliasing. Julia provides a function called `deepcopy` that can duplicate any object:

```
julia> p1 = MPoint(3.0, 4.0)
MPoint(3.0, 4.0)
julia> p2 = deepcopy(p1)
MPoint(3.0, 4.0)
julia> p1 == p2
false
julia> p1 === p2
false
```

The `==` operator indicates that `p1` and `p2` are not the same object, which is what we expected. But you might have expected `==` to yield `true` because these points contain the same data. In that case, you will be disappointed to learn that for mutable objects, the default behavior of the `==` operator is the same as the `===` operator; it checks object identity, not object equivalence. That's because for mutable composite types, Julia doesn't know what should be considered equivalent. At least, not yet.

#### TIP

As an exercise, create a `Point` instance, make a copy of it and check the equivalence and the equality of both. The result can surprise you but it explains why aliasing is a non issue for an immutable object.

## Debugging

When you start working with objects, you are likely to encounter some new exceptions. If you try to access a field that doesn't exist, you get:

```
julia> p = Point(3.0, 4.0)
Point(3.0, 4.0)
julia> p.z = 1.0
ERROR: type Point has no field z
Stacktrace:
 [1] setproperty!(::Point, ::Symbol, ::Float64) at ./sysimg.jl:19
 [2] top-level scope at none:0
```

If you are not sure what type an object is, you can ask:

```
julia> typeof(p)
Point
```

You can also use `isinstance` to check whether an object is an instance of a type:

```
julia> p isa Point
true
```

If you are not sure whether an object has a particular attribute, you can use the built-in function `fieldnames`:

```
julia> fieldnames(Point)
(:x, :y)
```

or the function `isdefined`:

```
julia> isdefined(p, :x)
true
julia> isdefined(p, :z)
false
```

The first argument can be any object; the second argument is a symbol, `:` followed by the name of the field.

You can also use a `try` statement to see if the object has the fields you need:

```
x = try
    p.x = 1.0
catch exc
    0.0
end
```

## Glossary

### struct

A composite type. A struct definition creates a new struct object.

### struct object

An object that contains information about a composite type. The struct object can be used to create instances of the type.

### instance

An object that belongs to a type.

### instantiate

To create a new object.

### attribute or field

One of the named values associated with an object.

### embedded object

An object that is stored as a field of another object.

### deep copy

To copy the contents of an object as well as any embedded objects, and any objects embedded in them, and so on; implemented by the `deepcopy` function.

### object diagram

A diagram that shows objects, their fields, and the values of the fields.

## Exercises

### Exercise 15-1

1. Write a definition for a type named `Circle` with fields `center` and `radius`, where `center` is a point object and `radius` is a number.
2. Instantiate a circle object that represents a circle with its center at (150, 100) and radius 75.

3. Write a function named `pointincircle` that takes a circle object and a point object and returns `true` if the point lies in or on the boundary of the circle.
4. Write a function named `rectincircle` that takes a circle object and a rectangle object and returns `true` if the rectangle lies entirely in or on the boundary of the circle.
5. Write a function named `rectcircleoverlap` that takes a circle object and a rectangle object and returns `true` if any of the corners of the rectangle fall inside the circle. Or as a more challenging version, return `true` if any part of the rectangle falls inside the circle.

#### Exercise 15-2

1. Write a function called `drawrect` that takes a turtle object and a rectangle object and uses the turtle to draw the rectangle. See Chapter 4 for examples using turtle objects.
2. Write a function called `drawcircle` that takes a turtle object and a circle object and draws the circle.

## 16. Structs and Functions

Now that we know how to create new composite types, the next step is to write functions that take programmer-defined objects as parameters and return them as results. In this chapter I also present “functional programming style” and two new program development plans.

### Time

As another example of a composite type, we’ll define a `mutable struct` called `MyTime` that records the time of day. The struct definition looks like this:

```
"""
Represents the time of day.

fields: hour, minute, second
"""
mutable struct MyTime
    hour
    minute
    second
end
```

JULIA

The name `Time` is already used in Julia and to avoid a name clash, I have chosen `MyTime`. We can create a new `mytime` object:

```
julia> time = MyTime(11, 59, 30)
MyTime{Int64}(11, 59, 30)
```

JLCON

The object diagram for the `mytime` object looks like Object diagram.

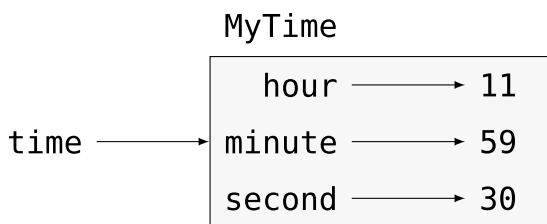


Figure 22. Object diagram

#### TIP

As an exercise, write a function called `printtime` that takes a `mytime` object and prints it in the form `hour:minute:second`. The `@printf` macro of the `StdLib` module `Printf` prints an integer with the format sequence `%02d` using at least two digits, including a leading zero if necessary.

Write a boolean function called `isafter` that takes two `mytime` objects, `t1` and `t2`, and returns `true` if `t1` follows `t2` chronologically and `false` otherwise. Challenge: don’t use an `if` statement.

### Pure Functions

In the next few sections, we’ll write two functions that add time values. They demonstrate two kinds of functions: pure functions and modifiers. They also demonstrate a development plan I’ll call *prototype and patch*, which is a way of tackling a complex problem by starting with a simple prototype and incrementally dealing with the complications.

Here is a simple prototype of `addtime`:

```
function addtime(t1, t2)
    MyTime(t1.hour + t2.hour, t1.minute + t2.minute, t1.second + t2.second)
end
```

JULIA

The function creates a new `MyTime` object, initializes its fields, and returns a reference to the new object. This is called a *pure function* because it does not modify any of the objects passed to it as arguments and it has no effect, like displaying a value or getting user input, other than returning a value.

To test this function, I'll create two `MyTime` objects: `start` contains the start time of a movie, like *Monty Python and the Holy Grail*, and `duration` contains the run time of the movie, which is one hour 35 minutes.

`addtime` figures out when the movie will be done.

```
julia> start = MyTime(9, 45, 0);

julia> duration = MyTime(1, 35, 0);

julia> done = addtime(start, duration);

julia> printtime(done)
10:80:00
```

JLCON

The result, `10:80:00` might not be what you were hoping for. The problem is that this function does not deal with cases where the number of seconds or minutes adds up to more than sixty. When that happens, we have to “carry” the extra seconds into the minute column or the extra minutes into the hour column. Here's an improved version:

```
function addtime(t1, t2)
    tsum = MyTime(t1.hour + t2.hour, t1.minute + t2.minute, t1.second + t2.second)
    if tsum.second >= 60
        tsum.second -= 60
        tsum.minute += 1
    end
    if tsum.minute >= 60
        tsum.minute -= 60
        tsum.hour += 1
    end
    tsum
end
```

JULIA

Although this function is correct, it is starting to get big. We will see a shorter alternative later.

## Modifiers

Sometimes it is useful for a function to modify the objects it gets as parameters. In that case, the changes are visible to the caller. Functions that work this way are called *modifiers*.

`increment!`, which adds a given number of seconds to a `mytime` object, can be written naturally as a modifier. Here is a rough draft:

```
function increment!(time, seconds)
    time.second += seconds
    if time.second >= 60
        time.second -= 60
        time.minute += 1
    end
    if time.minute >= 60
        time.minute -= 60
        time.hour += 1
    end
end
```

The first line performs the basic operation; the remainder deals with the special cases we saw before.

Is this function correct? What happens if seconds is much greater than 60?

In that case, it is not enough to carry once; we have to keep doing it until `time.second` is less than sixty. One solution is to replace the `if` statements with `while` statements. That would make the function correct, but not very efficient.

#### TIP

As an exercise, write a correct version of `increment!` that doesn't contain any loops.

Anything that can be done with modifiers can also be done with pure functions. In fact, some programming languages only allow pure functions. There is some evidence that programs that use pure functions are faster to develop and less error-prone than programs that use modifiers. But modifiers are convenient at times, and functional programs tend to be less efficient.

In general, I recommend that you write pure functions whenever it is reasonable and resort to modifiers only if there is a compelling advantage. This approach might be called a *functional programming style*.

#### TIP

As an exercise, write a “pure” version of `increment!` that creates and returns a new `mytime` object rather than modifying the parameter.

## Prototyping Versus Planning

The development plan I am demonstrating is called “prototype and patch”. For each function, I wrote a prototype that performed the basic calculation and then tested it, patching errors along the way.

This approach can be effective, especially if you don't yet have a deep understanding of the problem. But incremental corrections can generate code that is unnecessarily complicated—since it deals with many special cases—and unreliable—since it is hard to know if you have found all the errors.

An alternative is *designed development*, in which high-level insight into the problem can make the programming much easier. In this case, the insight is that a `Time` object is really a three-digit number in base 60 (see <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sexagesimal>)! The second attribute is the “ones column”, the minute attribute is the “sixties column”, and the hour attribute is the “thirty-six hundreds column”.

When we wrote `addtime` and `increment!`, we were effectively doing addition in base 60, which is why we had to carry from one column to the next.



This observation suggests another approach to the whole problem—we can convert mytime objects to integers and take advantage of the fact that the computer knows how to do integer arithmetic.

Here is a function that converts mytimes to integers:

```
function timetoint(time)
    minutes = time.hour * 60 + time.minute
    seconds = minutes * 60 + time.second
end
```

JULIA

And here is a function that converts an integer to a mytime (recall that `divrem` divides the first argument by the second and returns the quotient and remainder as a tuple):

```
function inttotime(seconds)
    (minutes, second) = divrem(seconds, 60)
    hour, minute = divrem(minutes, 60)
    MyTime(hour, minute, second)
end
```

JULIA

**TIP**

You might have to think a bit, and run some tests, to convince yourself that these functions are correct. One way to test them is to check that `timetoint(inttotime(x)) == x` for many values of `x`. This is an example of a consistency check.

Once you are convinced they are correct, you can use them to rewrite `addtime`:

```
function addtime(t1, t2)
    seconds = timetoint(t1) + timetoint(t2)
    inttotime(seconds)
end
```

JULIA

This version is shorter than the original, and easier to verify.

**TIP**

Rewrite `increment!` using `timetoint` and `inttotime`.

In some ways, converting from base 60 to base 10 and back is harder than just dealing with times. Base conversion is more abstract; our intuition for dealing with time values is better.

But if we have the insight to treat times as base 60 numbers and make the investment of writing the conversion functions (`timetoint` and `inttotime`), we get a program that is shorter, easier to read and debug, and more reliable.

It is also easier to add features later. For example, imagine subtracting two mytimes to find the duration between them. The naive approach would be to implement subtraction with borrowing. Using the conversion functions would be easier and more likely to be correct.

Ironically, sometimes making a problem harder (or more general) makes it easier (because there are fewer special cases and fewer opportunities for error).

## Debugging

A `mytime` object is well-formed if the values of `minute` and `second` are between 0 and 60 (including 0 but not 60) and if `hour` is positive. `hour` and `minute` should be integral values, but we might allow `second` to have a fraction part.

Requirements like these are called *invariants* because they should always be true. To put it a different way, if they are not true, something has gone wrong.

Writing code to check invariants can help detect errors and find their causes. For example, you might have a function like `isvalidtime` that takes a `mytime` object and returns `false` if it violates an invariant:

```
function isvalidtime(time)
    if time.hour < 0 || time.minute < 0 || time.second < 0
        return false
    end
    if time.minute >= 60 || time.second >= 60
        return false
    end
    true
end
```

JULIA

At the beginning of each function you could check the arguments to make sure they are valid:

```
function addtime(t1, t2)
    if isvalidtime(t1) && isvalidtime(t2)
        error("invalid MyTime object in add_time")
    end
    seconds = timetoint(t1) + timetoint(t2)
    inttotime(seconds)
end
```

JULIA

Or you could use an `@assert` macro, which checks a given invariant and throws an exception if it fails:

```
function addtime(t1, t2)
    @assert(isvalidtime(t1) && isvalidtime(t2), "invalid MyTime object in add_time")
    seconds = timetoint(t1) + timetoint(t2)
    inttotime(seconds)
end
```

JULIA

`@assert` macros are useful because they distinguish code that deals with normal conditions from code that checks for errors.

## Glossary

### prototype and patch

A development plan that involves writing a rough draft of a program, testing, and correcting errors as they are found.

### designed development

A development plan that involves high-level insight into the problem and more planning than incremental development or prototype development.

## pure function

A function that does not modify any of the objects it receives as arguments. Most pure functions are fruitful.

## modifier

A function that changes one or more of the objects it receives as arguments. Most modifiers are void; that is, they return nothing.

## functional programming style

A style of program design in which the majority of functions are pure.

## invariant

A condition that should always be true during the execution of a program.

## Exercises

### Exercise 16-1

Write a function called `multime` that takes a `mytime` object and a number and returns a new `mytime` object that contains the product of the original `mytime` and the number.

Then use `multime` to write a function that takes a `mytime` object that represents the finishing time in a race, and a number that represents the distance, and returns a `mytime` object that represents the average pace (time per mile).

### Exercise 16-2

Julia provides time objects that are similar to the `mytime` objects in this chapter, but they provide a rich set of function and operators. Read the documentation at <https://docs.julialang.org/en/stable/stdlib/Dates/>.

1. Write a program that gets the current date and prints the day of the week.
2. Write a program that takes a birthday as input and prints the user's age and the number of days, hours, minutes and seconds until their next birthday.
3. For two people born on different days, there is a day when one is twice as old as the other. That's their Double Day. Write a program that takes two birthdays and computes their Double Day.
4. For a little more challenge, write the more general version that computes the day when one person is  $n$  times older than the other.

## 17. Multiple Dispatch

In Julia you have the ability to write code that can operate on different types. This is called polymorphism. Julia's type system is dynamic but inherits some features of static type systems. A method can be efficiently dispatched on the number and the type of its arguments.

In this chapter I will discuss the use of type declarations in Julia and I will introduce methods, ways to implement different behavior for a function depending on its arguments and the associate multiple dispatch mechanism.

### Type Declarations

The `::` operator attaches *type annotations* to expressions and variables:

```
julia> (1 + 2) :: Float64
ERROR: TypeError: in typeassert, expected Float64, got Int64
julia> (1 + 2) :: Int64
3
```

JLCON

This helps to confirm that your program works the way you expect.

The `::` operator can also be appended to the left-hand side of an assignment, or as part of a declaration.

```
julia> function returnfloat()
    x::Float64 = 100
    x
end
returnfloat (generic function with 1 method)
julia> x = returnfloat()
100.0
julia> typeof(x)
Float64
```

JLCON

The variable `x` is always of type `Float64` and the value is converted to a floating point if needed.

A type annotation can also be attached to the header of a function definition:

```
function sinc(x)::Float64
    if x == 0
        return 1
    end
    sin(x)/(x)
end
```

JULIA

The return value of `sinc` is always converted to type `Float64`.

The default behavior in Julia when types are omitted is to allow values to be of any type (`Any`).

### Printing Objects

In Structs and Functions, we defined a struct named `MyTime` and in Time, you wrote a function named `printtime`:

```
using Printf

mutable struct MyTime
    hour :: Int64
    minute :: Int64
    second :: Int64
end

function printtime(time)
    @printf("%02d:%02d:%02d", time.hour, time.minute, time.second)
end
```

JULIA

As you can see, type declaration can also be added to the fields in a struct definition.

To call this function, you have to pass a mytime object as an argument:

```
julia> start = MyTime(9, 45, 0)
MyTime(9, 45, 0)
julia> printtime(start)
09:45:00
```

JLCON

To add a *method* to the function `printtime` that only accepts as argument a mytime object, all we have to do is append `::` followed by `MyTime` to the argument `time` in the function definition:

```
function printtime(time::MyTime)
    @printf("%02d:%02d:%02d", time.hour, time.minute, time.second)
end
```

JULIA

A method is a function definition with a specific *signature*: `printtime` has one argument of type `MyTime`.

Calling the function `printtime` with a mytime object yields the same result:

```
julia> printtime(start)
09:45:00
```

JLCON

We can now redefine the first method without the `::` type annotation allowing an argument of any type:

```
function printtime(time)
    println("I don't know how to print the argument time.")
end
```

JULIA

If you call the function `printtime` with an object different from mytime, you get now:

```
julia> printtime(150)
I don't know how to print the argument time.
```

JLCON

#### TIP

As an exercise, rewrite `timetoint` and `inttotime` (from Prototyping Versus Planning) to specify their argument.

## More Examples

Here's a version of `increment!` (from `Modifiers`) rewritten to specify its arguments:

```
function increment!(time::MyTime, seconds::Int64)
    seconds += timetoint(time)
    inttotime(seconds)
end
```

JULIA

Note that this time, it is a pure function, not a modifier.

Here's how you would invoke `increment`:

```
julia> start = MyTime(9, 45, 0)
MyTime(9, 45, 0)
julia> increment!(start, 1337)
MyTime(10, 7, 17)
```

JLCON

If you put the arguments in the wrong order, you get an error:

```
julia> increment!(1337, start)
ERROR: MethodError: no method matching increment!{::Int64, ::MyTime}
```

JLCON

The signature of the method is `printtime(time::MyTime, seconds::Int64)` and not `printtime(seconds::Int64, time::MyTime)`.

Rewriting `+isafter+` to act only on `mytime` objects is as easy:

```
function isafter(t1::MyTime, t2::MyTime)
    (t1.hour, t1.minute, t1.second) > (t2.hour, t2.minute, t2.second)
end
```

JULIA

By the way, optional arguments are implemented as syntax for multiple method definitions. For example, this definition:

```
function f(a=1, b=2)
    a + 2b
end
```

JULIA

translates to the following three methods:

```
f(a, b) = a + 2b
f(a) = f(a, 2)
f() = f(1, 2)
```

JULIA

These expressions are valid Julia method definitions. This is a shorthand notation for defining functions/methods.

## Constructors

A *constructor* is a special function that is called to create an object. The default constructor methods of `MyTime` have the following signatures:

```
MyTime(hour, minute, second)
MyTime(hour::Int64, minute::Int64, second::Int64)
```

We can also add our own *outer constructor* methods:

```
function MyTime(time::MyTime)
    MyTime(time.hour, time.minute, time.second)
end
```

This method is called a *copy constructor* because the new mytime object is a copy of argument.

To enforce invariants, we need *inner constructor* methods:

```
mutable struct MyTime
    hour :: Int64
    minute :: Int64
    second :: Int64
    function MyTime(hour::Int64=0, minute::Int64=0, second::Int64=0)
        @assert(0 ≤ minute < 60, "Minute is between 0 and 60.")
        @assert(0 ≤ second < 60, "Second is between 0 and 60.")
        new(hour, minute, second)
    end
end
```

The struct `MyTime` has now 6 constructor methods:

```
MyTime()
MyTime(hour::Int64)
MyTime(hour::Int64, minute::Int64)
MyTime(hour::Int64, minute::Int64, second::Int64)
MyTime(hour::Int64, minute::Int64, second::Int64)
MyTime(time::MyTime)
```

An inner constructor method is always declared inside the block of a type declaration and it has access to a function called `new` that creates objects of the newly declared type.

#### WARNING

If any inner constructor method is defined, no default constructor method is provided: it is presumed that you have supplied yourself with all the inner constructors you need.

A second method without arguments of the local function `new` exists:

```
mutable struct MyTime
    hour :: Int
    minute :: Int
    second :: Int
    function MyTime(hour::Int64=0, minute::Int64=0, second::Int64=0)
        @assert(0 ≤ minute < 60, "Minute is between 0 and 60.")
        @assert(0 ≤ second < 60, "Second is between 0 and 60.")
        time = new()
        time.hour = hour
        time.minute = minute
        time.second = second
        time
    end
end
```

This allows to construct recursive data structures.

## show

`show` is a special function that returns a string representation of an object. For example, here is a `show` method for `mytime` objects:

```
using Printf

function Base.show(io::IO, time::MyTime)
    @printf(io, "%02d:%02d:%02d", time.hour, time.minute, time.second)
end
```

The prefix `Base` is needed because we want to add a new method to the `Base.show` function.

When you print an object, Julia invokes the `show` function:

```
julia> time = MyTime(9, 45)
09:45:00
```

When I write a new composite type, I almost always start by writing an inner constructor, which makes it easier to instantiate objects, and `show`, which is useful for debugging.

### TIP

As an exercise, write an inner constructor method for the `Point` class that takes `x` and `y` as optional parameters and assigns them to the corresponding fields.

## Operator Overloading

By defining operator methods, you can specify the behavior of operators on programmer-defined types. For example, if you define a method named `+` with two `MyTime` arguments, you can use the `+` operator on `mytime` objects.

Here is what the definition might look like:



```
import Base.+

function +(t1::MyTime, t2::MyTime)
    seconds = timetoint(t1) + timetoint(t2)
    inttotime(seconds)
end
```

JULIA

The import statement adds the `+` operator to the local scope so that methods can be added.

And here is how you could use it:

```
julia> start = MyTime(9, 45)
09:45:00
julia> duration = MyTime(1, 35, 0)
01:35:00
julia> start + duration
11:20:00
```

JLCON

When you apply the `+` operator to mytime objects, Julia invokes the newly added method. When the REPL shows the result, Julia invokes `show`. So there is a lot happening behind the scenes!

Changing the behavior of an operator so that it works with programmer-defined types is called *operator overloading*.

## Multiple Dispatch

In the previous section we added two mytime objects, but you also might want to add an integer to a `MyTime` object:

```
function +(time::MyTime, seconds::Int64)
    increment!(time, seconds)
end
```

JULIA

Here is an example that use the `+` operator with a mytime object and an integer:

```
julia> start = MyTime(9, 45)
09:45:00
julia> start + 1337
10:07:17
```

JLCON

Addition is a commutative operator so we have to add another method.

```
function +(seconds::Int64, time::MyTime)
    increment!(time, seconds)
end
```

JULIA

And we get the same result:

```
julia> 1337 + start
10:07:17
```

JLCON

The choice of which method to execute when a function is applied is called *dispatch*. Julia allows the dispatch process to choose which of a function's methods to call based on the number of arguments given, and on the types of all of the function's arguments. Using all of a function's arguments to choose which method should be invoked is known as *multiple dispatch*.

#### TIP

As an exercise, write `+` methods for point objects:

- If both operands are point objects, the method should return a new point object whose `x` coordinate is the sum of the `x` coordinates of the operands, and likewise for the `y` coordinates.
- If the first or the second operand is a tuple, the method should add the first element of the tuple to the `x` coordinate and the second element to the `y` coordinate, and return a new point object with the result.

## Polymorphism

Multiple dispatch is useful when it is necessary, but (fortunately) it is not always necessary. Often you can avoid it by writing functions that work correctly for arguments with different types.

Many of the functions we wrote for strings also work for other sequence types. For example, in Dictionary as a Collection of Counters we used `histogram` to count the number of times each letter appears in a word.

```
function histogram(s)
    d = Dict{<
    for c in s
        if c ∉ keys(d)
            d[c] = 1
        else
            d[c] += 1
        end
    end
    d
end
```

JULIA

This function also works for lists, tuples, and even dictionaries, as long as the elements of `s` are hashable, so they can be used as keys in `d`.

```
julia> t = ("spam", "egg", "spam", "spam", "bacon", "spam")
("spam", "egg", "spam", "spam", "bacon", "spam")
julia> histogram(t)
Dict{Any,Any} with 3 entries:
"bacon" => 1
"spam"  => 4
"egg"   => 1
```

JLCON

Functions that work with several types are called *polymorphic*. Polymorphism can facilitate code reuse.

For example, the built-in function `sum`, which adds the elements of a sequence, works as long as the elements of the sequence support addition.

Since a `+` method is provided for mytime objects, they work with `sum`:

```
julia> t1 = MyTime(1, 7, 2)
01:07:02
julia> t2 = MyTime(1, 5, 8)
01:05:08
julia> t3 = MyTime(1, 5, 0)
01:05:00
julia> sum((t1, t2, t3))
03:17:10
```

In general, if all of the operations inside a function work with a given type, the function works with that type.

The best kind of polymorphism is the unintentional kind, where you discover that a function you already wrote can be applied to a type you never planned for.

## Interface and Implementation

One of the goals of multiple dispatch is to make software more maintainable, which means that you can keep the program working when other parts of the system change, and modify the program to meet new requirements.

A design principle that helps achieve that goal is to keep interfaces separate from implementations. For objects, that means that the methods having an argument annotated with a type should not depend on how the fields of that type are represented.

For example, in this chapter we developed a struct that represents a time of day. Methods having an argument annotated with this type include `timetoint`, `isafter`, and `+`.

We could implement those methods in several ways. The details of the implementation depend on how we represent `MyTime`. In this chapter, the fields of a `mytime` object are `hour`, `minute`, and `second`.

As an alternative, we could replace these field with a single integer representing the number of seconds since midnight. This implementation would make some functions, like `isafter`, easier to write, but it makes other functions harder.

After you deploy a new type, you might discover a better implementation. If other parts of the program are using your type, it might be time-consuming and error-prone to change the interface.

But if you designed the interface carefully, you can change the implementation without changing the interface, which means that other parts of the program don't have to change.

## Debugging

To know what methods are available, you can use the function `methods`:

```
julia> methods(printtime)
# 2 methods for generic function "printtime":
[1] printtime(time::MyTime) in Main at REPL[3]:2
[2] printtime(time) in Main at REPL[4]:2
```

## Glossary

### type annotation

The operator `::` followed by a type indicating that an expression or a variable is of that type.

**method**

A definition of a possible behavior for a function.

**dispatch**

The choice of which method to execute when a function is executed.

**signature**

The number and type of the arguments of a method allowing the dispatch to select the most specific method of a function during the function call.

**outer constructor**

Constructor defined outside the type definition to define convenience methods for creating an object.

**inner constructor**

Constructor defined inside the type definition to enforce invariants or to construct self-referential objects.

**copy constructor**

Outer constructor method of a type with as only argument an object of the type. It creates a new object that is a copy of the argument.

**operator overloading**

Changing the behavior of an operator like `+` so it works with a programmer-defined type.

**multiple dispatch**

Dispatch based on all of a function's arguments.

**polymorphic**

Pertaining to a function that can work with more than one type.

## Exercises

### Exercise 17-1

Change the fields of `MyTime` to be a single integer representing seconds since midnight. Then modify the methods defined in this chapter to work with the new implementation.

### Exercise 17-2

Write a definition for a type named `Kangaroo` with a field named `pouchcontents` of type `Array` and the following methods:

- An constructor that initializes `pouchcontents` to an empty array.
- A method named `putinpouch` that takes a `Kangaroo` object and an object of any type and adds it to `pouchcontents`.
- A `show` method that returns a string representation of the `Kangaroo` object and the contents of the pouch.

Test your code by creating two `Kangaroo` objects, assigning them to variables named `kanga` and `roo`, and then adding `roo` to the contents of `kanga`'s pouch.

## 18. Subtyping

In the previous chapter we introduced the multiple dispatch mechanism and polymorphic methods. Not specifying the type of the arguments results in a method that can be called with arguments of any type. Specifying a subset of allowed types in the signature of a method is a logical next step.

In this chapter I demonstrate subtyping using types that represent playing cards, decks of cards, and poker hands.

If you don't play poker, you can read about it at <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Poker>, but you don't have to; I'll tell you what you need to know for the exercises.

### Cards

There are fifty-two cards in a deck, each of which belongs to one of four suits and one of thirteen ranks. The suits are Spades (♠), Hearts (♥), Diamonds (♦), and Clubs (♣). The ranks are Ace (A), 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, Jack (J), Queen (Q), and King (K). Depending on the game that you are playing, an Ace may be higher than King or lower than 2.

If we want to define a new object to represent a playing card, it is obvious what the attributes should be: rank and suit. It is not as obvious what type the attributes should be. One possibility is to use strings containing words like "Spade" for suits and "Queen" for ranks. One problem with this implementation is that it would not be easy to compare cards to see which had a higher rank or suit.

An alternative is to use integers to *encode* the ranks and suits. In this context, “encode” means that we are going to define a mapping between numbers and suits, or between numbers and ranks. This kind of encoding is not meant to be a secret (that would be “encryption”).

For example, this table shows the suits and the corresponding integer codes:

- ♠ ↦ 4
- ♥ ↦ 3
- ♦ ↦ 2
- ♣ ↦ 1

This code makes it easy to compare cards; because higher suits map to higher numbers, we can compare suits by comparing their codes.

I am using the ↦ symbol to make it clear that these mappings are not part of the Julia program. They are part of the program design, but they don't appear explicitly in the code.

The struct definition for `Card` looks like this:

```
struct Card
    suit :: Int64
    rank :: Int64
    function Card(suit::Int64, rank::Int64)
        @assert(1 ≤ suit ≤ 4, "suit is between 1 and 4")
        @assert(1 ≤ rank ≤ 13, "rank is between 1 and 13")
        new(suit, rank)
    end
end
```

JULIA

To create a `Card`, you call `Card` with the suit and rank of the card you want:

```
julia> queen_of_diamonds = Card(2, 12)
Card(2, 12)
```

JLCON

## Global Variables

In order to print `Card` objects in a way that people can easily read, we need a mapping from the integer codes to the corresponding ranks and suits. A natural way to do that is with arrays of strings:

```
const suit_names = ["♠", "♦", "♥", "♣"]
const rank_names = ["A", "2", "3", "4", "5", "6", "7", "8", "9", "10", "J", "Q", "K"]
```

JULIA

The variables `suit_names` and `rank_names` are global variables. The `const` declaration means that the variable can only be assigned once. This solves the performance problem of global variables.

Now we can implement an appropriate `show` method:

```
function Base.show(io::IO, card::Card)
    print(io, rank_names[card.rank], suit_names[card.suit])
end
```

JULIA

The expression `rank_names[car.rank]` means “use the field `rank` from the object `card` as an index into the array `rank_names`, and select the appropriate string.”

With the methods we have so far, we can create and print cards:

```
julia> Card(3, 11)
J♥
```

JLCON

## Comparing Cards

For built-in types, there are relational operators (`<`, `>`, `==`, etc.) that compare values and determine when one is greater than, less than, or equal to another. For programmer-defined types, we can override the behavior of the built-in operators by providing a method named: `Base.isless`.

The correct ordering for cards is not obvious. For example, which is better, the 3 of Clubs or the 2 of Diamonds? One has a higher rank, but the other has a higher suit. In order to compare cards, you have to decide whether rank or suit is more important.

The answer might depend on what game you are playing, but to keep things simple, we’ll make the arbitrary choice that suit is more important, so all of the Spades outrank all of the Diamonds, and so on.

With that decided, we can write `isless`:

```
function Base.isless(c1::Card, c2::Card)
    isless((c1.suit, c1.rank), (c2.suit, c2.rank))
end
```

JULIA

## TIP

As an exercise, write a `isless` method for `mytime` objects. You can use tuple comparison, but you also might consider comparing integers.

## Unit Testing

*Unit testing* is a way to see if your code is correct by checking that the results are what you expect. It can be helpful to ensure your code still works after you make changes, and can be used when developing as a way of specifying the behaviors your code should have when complete.

Simple unit testing can be performed with the `@test` macros:

```
julia> using Test

julia> @test isless(Card(1, 4), Card(2, 4))
Test Passed
julia> @test isless(Card(1, 3), Card(1, 4))
Test Passed
```

JLCON

`@test` returns a "Test Passed" if the expression following it is `true`, a "Test Failed" if it is `false`, and an "Error Result" if it could not be evaluated.

## Decks

Now that we have `Cards`, the next step is to define `Decks`. Since a deck is made up of cards, it is natural for each `Deck` to contain an array of cards as an attribute.

The following is a struct definition for `Deck`. The constructor creates the fields `cards` and generates the standard set of fifty-two cards:

```
struct Deck
    cards :: Array{Card, 1}
    function Deck()
        deck = new{Card[]}
        for suit in 1:4
            for rank in 1:13
                push!(deck.cards, Card(suit, rank))
            end
        end
        deck
    end
end
```

JULIA

The easiest way to populate the deck is with a nested loop. The outer loop enumerates the suits from 1 to 4. The inner loop enumerates the ranks from 1 to 13. Each iteration creates a new `Card` with the current suit and rank, and pushes it to `deck.cards`.

Here is a `show` method for `Deck`:

```
function Base.show(io::IO, deck::Deck)
    for card in deck.cards
        print(io, card, " ")
    end
    println()
end
```

JULIA

Here's what the result looks like:

```
julia> Deck()
A♠ 2♠ 3♠ 4♠ 5♠ 6♠ 7♠ 8♠ 9♠ 10♠ J♠ Q♠ K♠ A♦ 2♦ 3♦ 4♦ 5♦ 6♦ 7♦ 8♦ 9♦ 10♦ J♦ Q♦ K♦ A♥ 2♥ 3♥ 4♥ 5♥ 6♥ 7♥ 8♥ 9♥ 10♥ J♥
Q♥ K♥ A♣ 2♣ 3♣ 4♣ 5♣ 6♣ 7♣ 8♣ 9♣ 10♣ J♣ Q♣ K♣
```

JLCON

## Add, Remove, Shuffle and Sort

To deal cards, we would like a function that removes a card from the deck and returns it. The function `pop!` provides a convenient way to do that:

```
function Base.pop!(deck::Deck)
    pop!(deck.cards)
end
```

JULIA

Since `pop!` removes the last card in the array, we are dealing from the bottom of the deck.

To add a card, we can use the function `push!` :

```
function Base.push!(deck::Deck, card::Card)
    push!(deck.cards, card)
    nothing
end
```

JULIA

A method like this that uses another method without doing much work is sometimes called a *veneer*. The metaphor comes from woodworking, where a veneer is a thin layer of good quality wood glued to the surface of a cheaper piece of wood to improve the appearance.

In this case `push!` is a “thin” method that expresses an array operation in terms appropriate for decks. It improves the appearance, or interface, of the implementation.

As another example, we can write a method named `shuffle!` using the function `Random.shuffle!` :

```
using Random

function Random.shuffle!(deck::Deck)
    shuffle!(deck.cards)
    nothing
end
```

JULIA

### TIP

Write a function named `sort!` that uses the function `sort!` to sort the cards in a Deck. `sort!` uses the `isless` method we defined to determine the order.



## Abstract Types and Subtyping

We want a type to represent a “hand”, that is, the cards held by one player. A hand is similar to a deck: both are made up of a collection of cards, and both require operations like adding and removing cards.

A hand is also different from a deck; there are operations we want for hands that don’t make sense for a deck. For example, in poker we might compare two hands to see which one wins. In bridge, we might compute a score for a hand in order to make a bid.

So we need a way to group related *concrete types*. In Julia this is done by defining an *abstract type* that serves as a parent for both `Deck` and `Hand`. This is called *subtyping*.

Let’s call this abstract type `CardSet` :

```
abstract type CardSet end
```

JULIA

The `abstract type` keyword introduces a new abstract type. The name can be optionally followed by `<:` and an already-existing abstract type, indicating that the newly declared abstract type is a *subtype* of this “parent” type.

When no *supertype* is given, the default supertype is `Any` – a predefined abstract type that all objects are instances of and all types are subtypes of.

We can now express that `Deck` is a descendant of `CardSet` :

```
struct Deck <: CardSet
    cards :: Array{Card, 1}
    function Deck()
        deck = new{Card{}}()
        for suit in 1:4
            for rank in 1:13
                push!(deck.cards, Card(suit, rank))
            end
        end
        deck
    end
end
```

JULIA

The operator `isa` checks whether an object is of a given type:

```
julia> deck = Deck();

julia> deck isa CardSet
true
```

JLCON

A hand is also a kind of `CardSet` :

```

struct Hand <: CardSet
    cards :: Array{Card, 1}
    label :: String
    function Hand(label::String="")
        new(Card[], label)
    end
end

```

Instead of populating the hand with 52 new cards, the constructor for `Hand` initializes `cards` with an empty array. An optional argument can be passed to the constructor giving a label to the `Hand`.

```

julia> hand = Hand("new hand")
Hand{Card[], "new hand"}

```

## Abstract Types and Functions

We can now express the common operations between `Deck` and `Hand` as functions having as argument `CardSet`:

```

function Base.show(io::IO, cs::CardSet)
    for card in cs.cards
        print(io, card, " ")
    end
end

function Base.pop!(cs::CardSet)
    pop!(cs.cards)
end

function Base.push!(cs::CardSet, card::Card)
    push!(cs.cards, card)
    nothing
end

```

We can use `pop!` and `push!` to deal a card:

```

deck = Deck();
shuffle!(deck)
card = pop!(deck);
push!(hand, card)
hand

```

A natural next step is to encapsulate this code in a function called `move!`:

```

function move!(cs1::CardSet, cs2::CardSet, n::Int)
    @assert 1 ≤ n ≤ length(cs1.cards)
    for i in 1:n
        card = pop!(cs1)
        push!(cs2, card)
    end
    nothing
end

```

`move!` takes three arguments, two `cardset` objects and the number of cards to deal. It modifies both `cardset` objects, and returns `nothing`.

In some games, cards are moved from one hand to another, or from a hand back to the deck. You can use `move!` for any of these operations: `cs1` and `cs2` can be either a `Deck` or a `Hand`.

## Type Diagrams

So far we have seen stack diagrams, which show the state of a program, and object diagrams, which show the attributes of an object and their values. These diagrams represent a snapshot in the execution of a program, so they change as the program runs.

They are also highly detailed; for some purposes, too detailed. A *type diagram* is a more abstract representation of the structure of a program. Instead of showing individual objects, it shows types and the relationships between them.

There are several kinds of relationship between types:

- Objects of a concrete type might contain references to objects of another type. For example, each `Rectangle` contains a reference to a `Point`, and each `Deck` contains references to an array of `Cards`. This kind of relationship is called *HAS-A*, as in, “a `Rectangle` has a `Point`”.
- One type might have as a supertype an abstract type. This relationship is called *IS-A*, as in, “a `Hand` is a kind of a `CardSet`.”
- One type might depend on another in the sense that objects of one type take objects of the second type as parameters, or use objects of the second type as part of a computation. This kind of relationship is called a *dependency*.

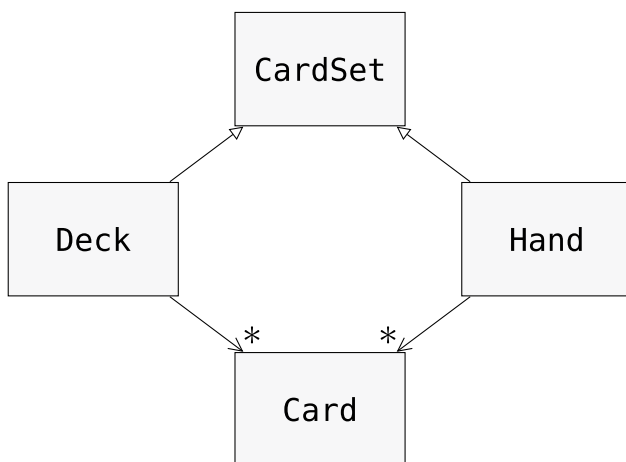


Figure 23. Type diagram

The arrow with a hollow triangle head represents an IS-A relationship; in this case it indicates that `Hand` has as supertype `CardSet`.

The standard arrow head represents a HAS-A relationship; in this case a `Deck` has references to `Card` objects.

The star ( `*` ) near the arrow head is a *multiplicity*; it indicates how many `Cards` a `Deck` has. A multiplicity can be a simple number, like `52`, a range, like `5:7` or a star, which indicates that a `Deck` can have any number of `Cards`.

There are no dependencies in this diagram. They would normally be shown with a dashed arrow. Or if there are a lot of dependencies, they are sometimes omitted.

A more detailed diagram might show that a Deck actually contains an array of Cards, but built-in types like array and dictionaries are usually not included in type diagrams.

## Debugging

Subtyping can make debugging difficult because when you call a function with an object as argument, it might be hard to figure out which method will be invoked.

Suppose you are writing a function that works with Hand objects. You would like it to work with all kinds of Hands, like PokerHands, BridgeHands, etc. If you invoke a method like `sort!`, you might get the one defined for an abstract type `Hand`, but if a method `sort!` with as argument any of the subtypes exists, you'll get that version instead. This behavior is usually a good thing, but it can be confusing.

```
function Base.sort!(hand::Hand)
    sort!(hand.cards)
end
```

JULIA

Any time you are unsure about the flow of execution through your program, the simplest solution is to add print statements at the beginning of the relevant methods. If `shuffle!` prints a message that says something like `Running shuffle! Deck`, then as the program runs it traces the flow of execution.

As an alternative, you can also use the `InteractiveUtils.@which` macro:

```
julia> using InteractiveUtils

julia> @which sort!(hand)
sort!(hand::Hand) in Main at REPL[5]:1
```

JLCON

So the `sort!` method for `hand` is the one having as argument an object of type `Hand`.

Here's a design suggestion: when you override a method, the interface of the new method should be the same as the old. It should take the same parameters, return the same type, and obey the same preconditions and postconditions. If you follow this rule, you will find that any function designed to work with an instance of a supertype, like an `CardSet`, will also work with instances of its subtypes `Deck` and `Hand`.

If you violate this rule, which is called the “Liskov substitution principle”, your code will collapse like (sorry) a house of cards.

## Data Encapsulation

The previous chapters demonstrate a development plan we might call “type-oriented design”. We identified objects we needed—like `Point`, `Rectangle` and `MyTime`—and defined structs to represent them. In each case there is an obvious correspondence between the object and some entity in the real world (or at least a mathematical world).

But sometimes it is less obvious what objects you need and how they should interact. In that case you need a different development plan. In the same way that we discovered function interfaces by encapsulation and generalization, we can discover type interfaces by *data encapsulation*.

Markov analysis, from *Markov Analysis*, provides a good example. If you download my code from <https://github.com/BenLauwens/ThinkJulia.jl/blob/master/src/solutions/chap13.jl>, you'll see that it uses two global variables—`suffixes` and `prefix`—that are read and written from several functions.

```
suffixes = Dict()
prefix = []
```

JULIA

Because these variables are global, we can only run one analysis at a time. If we read two texts, their prefixes and suffixes would be added to the same data structures (which makes for some interesting generated text).

To run multiple analyses, and keep them separate, we can encapsulate the state of each analysis in an object. Here's what that looks like:

```
struct Markov
    order :: Int64
    suffixes :: Dict{String, Array{String, 1}}
    prefix :: Array{String, 1}
    function Markov(order::Int64=2)
        new(order, Dict{String, Array{String, 1}}(), Array{String, 1}())
    end
end
```

JULIA

Next, we transform the functions into methods. For example, here's `processword`:

```
function processword(markov::Markov, word::String)
    if length(markov.prefix) < markov.order
        push!(markov.prefix, word)
        return
    end
    get!(markov.suffixes, (markov.prefix...,), Array{String, 1}())
    push!(markov.suffixes[(markov.prefix...,)], word)
    pushfirst!(markov.prefix)
    push!(markov.prefix, word)
end
```

JULIA

Transforming a program like this—changing the design without changing the behavior—is another example of refactoring (see *Refactoring*).

This example suggests a development plan for designing types:

- Start by writing functions that read and write global variables (when necessary).
- Once you get the program working, look for associations between global variables and the functions that use them.
- Encapsulate related variables as fields of a struct.
- Transform the associated functions into methods with as argument objects of the new type.

**TIP**

As an exercise, download my Markov code from <https://github.com/BenLauwens/ThinkJulia.jl/blob/master/src/solutions/chap13.jl>, and follow the steps described above to encapsulate the global variables as attributes of a new struct called `Markov`.

## Glossary

### **encode**

To represent one set of values using another set of values by constructing a mapping between them.

### **unit testing**

Standardized way to test the correctness of code.

### **veneer**

A method or function that provides a different interface to another function without doing much computation.

### **subtyping**

The ability to define a hierarchy of related types.

### **abstract type**

A type that can act as a parent for another type.

### **concrete type**

A type that can be constructed.

### **subtype**

A type that has as parent an abstract type.

### **supertype**

An abstract type that is the parent of another type.

### **IS-A relationship**

A relationship between a subtype and its supertype.

### **HAS-A relationship**

A relationship between two types where instances of one type contain references to instances of the other.

### **dependency**

A relationship between two types where instances of one type use instances of the other type, but do not store them as fields.

### **type diagram**

A diagram that shows the types in a program and the relationships between them.

### **multiplicity**

A notation in a type diagram that shows, for a HAS-A relationship, how many references there are to instances of another class.

### **data encapsulation**

A program development plan that involves a prototype using global variables and a final version that makes the global variables into instance fields.

## Exercises

### Exercise 18-1

For the following program, draw a type diagram that shows these types and the relationships among them.

```
abstract type PingPongParent end

struct Ping <: PingPongParent
    pong :: PingPongParent
end

struct Pong <: PingPongParent
    pings :: Array{Ping, 1}
    function Pong(pings=Array{Ping, 1}())
        new(pings)
    end
end

function addping(pong::Pong, ping::Ping)
    push!(pong.pings, ping)
    nothing
end

pong = Pong()
ping = Ping(pong)
addping(pong, ping)
```

JULIA

### Exercise 18-2

Write a method called `deal!` that takes three parameters, a deck, the number of hands and the number of cards per hand. It should create the appropriate number of Hand objects, deal the appropriate number of cards per hand, and return an array of Hands.

### Exercise 18-3

The following are the possible hands in poker, in increasing order of value and decreasing order of probability:

#### **pair**

two cards with the same rank

#### **two pair**

two pairs of cards with the same rank

#### **three of a kind**

three cards with the same rank

#### **straight**

five cards with ranks in sequence (aces can be high or low, so Ace-2-3-4-5 is a straight and so is 10-Jack-Queen-King-Ace, but Queen-King-Ace-2-3 is not.)

#### **flush**

five cards with the same suit

**full house**

three cards with one rank, two cards with another

**four of a kind**

four cards with the same rank

**straight flush**

five cards in sequence (as defined above) and with the same suit

The goal of this exercise is to estimate the probability of drawing these various hands.

1. Add methods named `haspair`, `hastwopair`, etc. that return `true` or `false` according to whether or not the hand meets the relevant criteria. Your code should work correctly for “hands” that contain any number of cards (although 5 and 7 are the most common sizes).
2. Write a method named `classify` that figures out the highest-value classification for a hand and sets the `label` field accordingly. For example, a 7-card hand might contain a flush and a pair; it should be labeled “flush”.
3. When you are convinced that your classification methods are working, the next step is to estimate the probabilities of the various hands. Write a function that shuffles a deck of cards, divides it into hands, classifies the hands, and counts the number of times various classifications appear.
4. Print a table of the classifications and their probabilities. Run your program with larger and larger numbers of hands until the output values converge to a reasonable degree of accuracy. Compare your results to the values at [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hand\\_rankings](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hand_rankings).



## 19. The Goodies: Syntax

One of my goals for this book has been to teach you as little Julia as possible. When there were two ways to do something, I picked one and avoided mentioning the other. Or sometimes I put the second one into an exercise.

Now I want to go back for some of the good bits that got left behind. Julia provides a number of features that are not really necessary—you can write good code without them—but with them you can sometimes write code that’s more concise, readable or efficient, and sometimes all three.

This chapter and the next discuss the things I have left out in the previous chapters:

- syntax supplements
- functions, types and macros directly available in `Base`
- functions, types and macros in the Standard Library

### Blocks

`begin ... end` is used to group a number of statements. This is called a block of code.

In Case Study: Interface Design the `@svg` macro was introduced:

```
? = Turtle()
@svg begin
    forward(?, 100)
    turn(?, -90)
    forward(?, 100)
end
```

JULIA

The macro has as argument the block of code consisting of 3 function calls.

### Closures and `let` blocks

The function `funcgen` returns an array with two anonymous functions (see next sections) which return respectively the values 1 and 2:

```
function funcgen(i)          # WRONG
    res = Function[]
    while i < 3
        push!(res, ()->i)
        i += 1
    end
    res
end
```

JULIA

We don’t get what we expected.

```
julia> fs = funcgen(1);

julia> fs[1]()
3
julia> fs[2]()
3
```

JLCON

The returned functions are *closures* and the variable `i` is common to both of them.

A *let block* creates new variable bindings and provides a solution to our problem:

```
function funcgen(i)
    res = Function[]
    while i < 3
        let i = i
        push!(res, ()->i)
    end
    i += 1
end
res
end
```

JULIA

Now, we get what we expected:

```
julia> fs = funcgen(1);

julia> fs[1]()
1
julia> fs[2]()
2
```

JLCON

## Functions

### Anonymous Functions

We can define a function without specifying a name:

```
julia> f = x -> x^2 + 2x - 1
#1 (generic function with 1 method)
julia> f = function (x)
    x^2 + 2x - 1
end
#3 (generic function with 1 method)
```

JLCON

`f` is an *anonymous function* which is called as a normal function. Anonymous functions are often used as an argument to another function:

```
julia> using Plots

julia> plot(0.0:0.1:10.0, f)
```

JLCON

Plot shows the output of the plotting command.

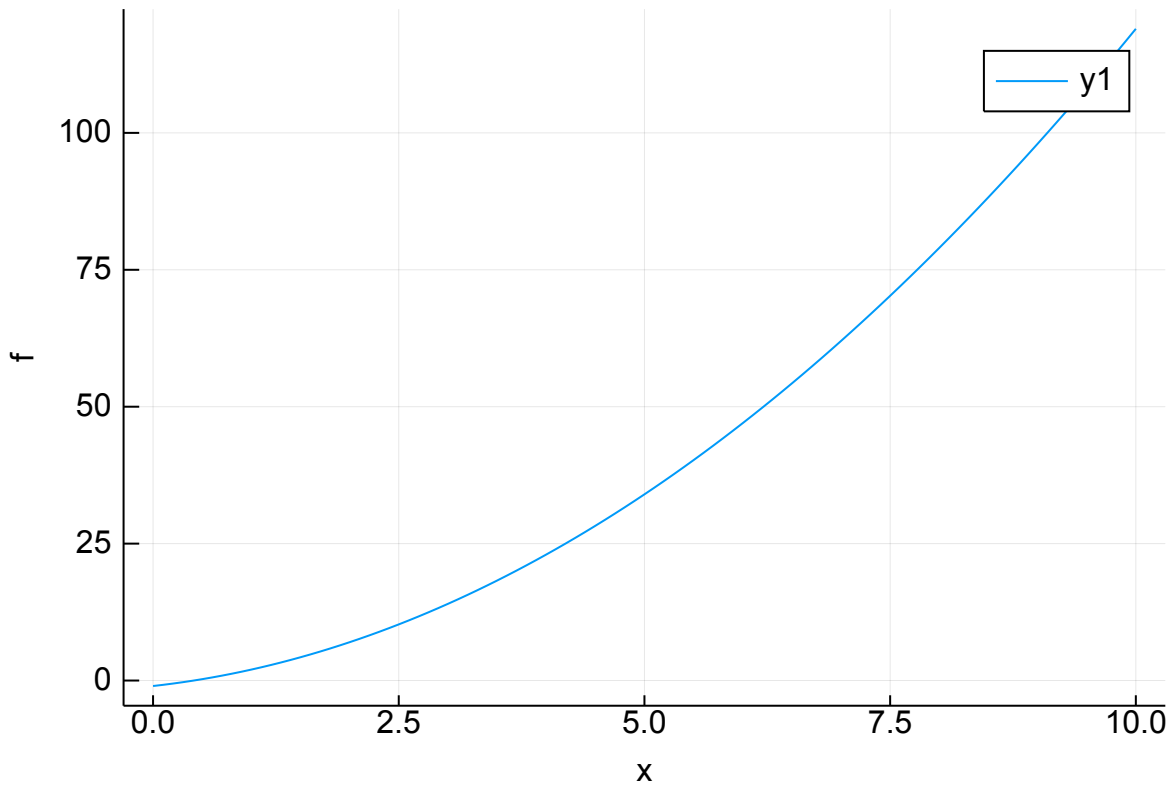


Figure 24. Plot

## Named Tuples

You can name the components of a tuple:

```
julia> x = (a=1, b=1+1)
(a = 1, b = 2)
julia> x.a
1
```

JLCON

This is called a *named tuple* having the additional property that fields can be accessed by name using dot syntax `(x.a)`.

## Keyword Arguments

Function arguments can also be named:

```
julia> function plot(x, y; style="solid", width=1, color="black")
    ###
end
plot (generic function with 1 method)
julia> plot(0:10, 0:10; style="dotted", color="blue")
```

JLCON

*Keyword arguments* in a function are specified after a semicolon in the signature.

## do Block

In Reading and Writing we had to close the file after when where done writing. This can be done automatically using a *do block*:

```
julia> data = "This here's the wattle,\nthe emblem of our land.\n"
"This here's the wattle,\nthe emblem of our land.\n"
julia> open("output.txt", "w") do fout
    write(fout, data)
end
48
```

JLCON

This is functionally equivalent to

```
julia> f = (fout) -> begin
    write(fout, data)
end
#7 (generic function with 1 method)
julia> open(f, "output.txt", "w")
48
```

JLCON

The anonymous function is used as first argument of the function `open`:

```
function open(f::Function, args...)
    io = open(args...)
    try
        f(io)
    finally
        close(io)
    end
end
```

JULIA

A `do` block can “capture” variables from its enclosing scope. For example, the variable `data` in the above example of `open...do` is captured from the outer scope.

## Control Flow

### Ternary Operator

The *ternary operator*, `?:`, is an alternative to an `if-elseif` statement, when the choice is between single expression values.

```
julia> a = 150
150
julia> a % 2 == 0 ? println("even") : println("odd")
even
```

JLCON

The expression before the `?`, is a condition expression. If the condition is `true`, the expression before the `:` is evaluated, otherwise, the expression after the `:` is evaluated.

### Short-Circuit Evaluation

The operators `&&` and `||` do a *short-circuit evaluation*: in a series of boolean expressions connected by these operators, only the minimum number of expressions are evaluated as are necessary to determine the final boolean value of the entire chain.

For example, a recursive factorial routine could be defined like this:

```
function fact(n::Int)
    n >= 0 || error("n must be non-negative")
    n == 0 && return 1
    n * fact(n-1)
end
```

## Tasks (aka Coroutines)

The Fibonacci sequence can also be generated using a *task*.

```
function fib(c::Channel)
    a = 0
    b = 1
    put!(c, a)
    while true
        put!(c, b)
        (a, b) = (b, a+b)
    end
end
```

`put!` stores values in a channel object and `take!` reads values:

```
julia> fib_gen = Channel{Int}(fib);

julia> take!(fib_gen)
0
julia> take!(fib_gen)
1
julia> take!(fib_gen)
1
julia> take!(fib_gen)
2
julia> take!(fib_gen)
3
```

The function `fib` is suspended after each call to `put!` and resumed after `take!`. For performance reasons, several values of the sequence are buffered in the channel object during a resume/suspend cycle.

A channel object can also be used as an iterator:

```
julia> for val in Channel{Int}(fib)
    print(val, " ")
    val > 20 && break
end
0 1 1 2 3 5 8 13 21
```

## Types

### Primitive Types

A concrete type consisting of plain old bits, is called a *primitive type*. Unlike most languages, you can declare your own primitive types. The standard primitive types are defined in the same way:

```
primitive type Float64 <: AbstractFloat 64 end
primitive type Bool <: Integer 8 end
primitive type Char <: AbstractChar 32 end
primitive type Int64 <: Signed 64 end
```

The number in the statements specifies how many bits are required.

## Parametric Types

Julia's type system is *parametric*: types can have parameters.

Type parameters are introduced after the name of the type, surrounded by curly braces:

```
struct Point{T<:Real}
    x::T
    y::T
end
```

This defines a new parametric type, `Point{T<:Real}`, holding two "coordinates" of type `T` which can be any type having `Real` as supertype.

```
julia> Point(0.0, 0.0)
Point{Float64}(0.0, 0.0)
```

Not only composite types can be parametric, abstract types and primitive types can also have a type parameter.

## Type Unions

A *type union* is an abstract parametric type that can act as any of its argument types:

```
julia> IntOrString = Union{Int,AbstractString}
Union{Int64, AbstractString}
julia> 150 :: IntOrString
150
julia> "Julia" :: IntOrString
"Julia"
```

## Methods

### Parametric Methods

Method definitions can also have type parameters qualifying their signature:

```
julia> isintpoint(p::Point{T}) where {T} = T == Int64
isintpoint (generic function with 1 method)
julia> p = Point(1, 2)
Point{Int64}(1, 2)
julia> isintpoint(p)
true
```

## Function-like Objects

An arbitrary Julia object can be made "callable". Such "callable" objects are sometimes called *functors*.

JULIA

```

struct Polynomial{R}
    coeffs::Vector{R}
end

function (p::Polynomial)(x)
    v = p.coeffs[end]
    for i = (length(p.coeffs)-1):-1:1
        v = v*x + p.coeffs[i]
    end
    v
end

```

To evaluate the polynomial, we simply have to call it:

JLCON

```

julia> p = Polynomial([1,10,100])
Polynomial{Int64}([1, 10, 100])
julia> p(3)
931

```

## Constructors

Parametric types can be explicitly or implicitly constructed:

JLCON

```

julia> Point(1,2) ## implicit T ##
Point{Int64}(1, 2)
julia> Point{Int64}(1, 2) ## explicit T ##
Point{Int64}(1, 2)
julia> Point(1,2.5) ## implicit T ##
ERROR: MethodError: no method matching Point{::Int64, ::Float64}

```

Default inner and outer constructors are generated for each `T`:

JULIA

```

struct Point{T<:Real}
    x::T
    y::T
    Point{T}(x,y) where {T<:Real} = new(x,y)
end

Point(x::T, y::T) where {T<:Real} = Point{T}(x,y);

```

and both `x` and `y` have to be of the same type.

To solve this problem following outer constructor can be defined:

JULIA

```

Point(x::Real, y::Real) = Point(promote(x,y)...);

```

The `promote` function is detailed in the next section.

## Conversion and Promotion

Julia has a system for promoting arguments to a common type. This is not done automatically but can be easily extended.

## Conversion

A value can be converted from one type to another:

```
julia> x = 12
12
julia> typeof(x)
Int64
julia> convert(UInt8, x)
0x0c
julia> typeof(ans)
UInt8
```

JLCON

We can add our own `convert` methods:

```
julia> Base.convert(::Type{Point{T}}, x::Array{T, 1}) where {T<:Real} = Point(x...)

julia> convert(Point{Int64}, [1, 2])
Point{Int64}(1, 2)
```

JLCON

## Promotion

*Promotion* is the conversion of values of mixed types to a single common type:

```
julia> promote(1, 2.5, 3)
(1.0, 2.5, 3.0)
```

JLCON

Methods for the `promote` function are normally not directly defined, but the auxiliary function `promote_rule` is used to specify the rules for promotion:

```
promote_rule(::Type{Float64}, ::Type{Int32}) = Float64
```

JULIA

## Metaprogramming

Julia code can be represented as a data structure of the language itself. This allows a program to transform and generate its own code.

## Expressions

Every Julia program starts as a string:

```
julia> prog = "1 + 2"
"1 + 2"
```

JLCON

The next step is to parse each string into an object called an *expression*, represented by the Julia type `Expr` :



```
julia> ex = Meta.parse(prog)
:(1 + 2)
julia> typeof(ex)
Expr
julia> dump(ex)
Expr
  head: Symbol call
  args: Array{Any}((3,))
    1: Symbol +
    2: Int64 1
    3: Int64 2
```

JLCON

The `dump` function displays expr objects with annotations.

Expressions can be constructed directly by prefixing with `:` inside parentheses or using a quote block

```
julia> ex = quote
      1 + 2
end;
```

JLCON

## eval

Julia can evaluate an expression object using `eval` :

```
julia> Core.eval(Main, ex)
3
```

JLCON

Every module has its own `eval` function that evaluates expressions in its scope.

### WARNING

When you are using a lot of calls to the function `eval` , often this means that something is wrong. `eval` is considered “evil”.

## Macros

Macros can include generated code in a program. A *macro* maps a tuple of arguments directly to a compiled expression:

Here is a simple macro:

```
macro sayhello(name)
    :( println("Hello, ", $name, "!") )
end
```

JULIA

Macros are called by prefixing their name with the `@` (at-sign). The macro call `@sayhello("World")` is replaced by:

```
:((Main.println)("Hello, ", "World", "!"))
```

JULIA

`@macroexpand @sayhello "World"` returns this expression which is extremely useful for debugging.

## NOTE

Why macros?

Macros generate and include fragments of customized code during parse time, thus *before* the full program is run.

## Generated Functions

The macro `@generated` creates specialized code for methods depending on the types of the arguments:

```
@generated function square(x)
    println(x)
    :(x * x)
end
```

JULIA

The body returns a quoted expression like a macro.

For the caller, the *generate function* behaves as a regular function:

```
julia> x = square(2); # note: output is from println() statement in the body
Int64
julia> x
4
julia> y = square("spam");
String
julia> y
"spamspace"
```

JLCON

## Missing Values

*missing values* can be represented via the `missing` object, which is the singleton instance of the type `Missing`.

Arrays can contain missing values:

```
julia> a = [1, missing]
2-element Array{Union{Missing, Int64},1}:
 1
 missing
```

JLCON

The element type of such an array is `Union{Missing, T}`, with `T` the type of the non-missing values.

Reduction functions return `missing` when called on arrays which contain missing values

```
julia> sum(a)
missing
```

JLCON

In this situation, use the `skipmissing` function to skip missing values:

```
julia> sum(skipmissing([1, missing]))
1
```

JLCON

## Calling C and Fortran Code

Julia can integrate existing C or Fortran code by making an appropriate call with `ccall` syntax.

In Databases I introduced a Julia interface to the GDBM library of database functions. The library is written in C. To close the database a function call to `close(db)` has to be made:

```
Base.close(dbm::DBM) = gdbm_close(dbm.handle)

function gdbm_close(handle::Ptr{Cvoid})
    ccall(:gdbm_close, "libgdbm"), Cvoid, (Ptr{Cvoid},), handle)
end
```

JULIA

A `dbm` object has a field `handle` of `Ptr{Cvoid}` type. This field holds a C pointer that refers to the database. To close the database the C function `gdbm_close` has to be called having as only argument the C pointer pointing to the database and no return value. Julia does this directly with the `ccall` function having as arguments:

- a tuple consisting of a symbol holding the name of the function we want to call: `:gdbm_close` and the shared library specified as a string: `"libgdbm"`,
- the return type: `Cvoid`,
- a tuple of argument types: `(Ptr{Cvoid},)` and
- the argument values: `handle`.

The complete mapping of the GDBM library can be found as an example in the ThinkJulia sources.

## Glossary

### closure

Function that captures variables from its defining scope.

### let block

Block allocating new variable bindings.

### anonymous function

Function defined without being given a name.

### named tuple

Tuple with named components.

### keyword arguments

Arguments identified by name instead of only by position.

### do block

Syntax construction used to define and call an anonymous function which looks like a normal code block.

### ternary operator

Control flow operator taking three operands to specify a condition, an expression to be executed when the condition yields `true` and an expression to be executed when the condition yields `false`.

**short-circuit evaluation**

Evaluation of a boolean operator for which the second argument is executed or evaluated only if the first argument does not suffice to determine the value of the expression.

**task (aka coroutine)**

Control flow feature that allows computations to be suspended and resumed in a flexible manner.

**primitive type**

Concrete type whose data consists of plain old bits.

**type union**

Abstract type which includes as objects all instances of any of its argument types.

**parametric type**

Type that can be parameterized.

**functor**

Type with an associated method, so that it looks callable.

**conversion**

Convert a value from one type to another.

**promotion**

Converting values of mixed types to a single common type.

**expression**

Julia type that holds a language construct.

**macro**

Way to include generated code in the final body of a program.

**generated functions**

Functions capable of generating specialized code depending on the types of the arguments.

**missing values**

Instances that represent data points with no value.

## 20. The Goodies: Base and Standard Library

`Base` contains a number of functions, types and macros that are directly available in Julia.

Julia provides also a large number of specialized modules in its Standard Library. Functions, types and macros defined in the Standard Library have to be imported before they can be used:

- `import Module` imports the module, and `Module.fn(x)` calls the function `fn`
- `using Module` imports all exported `Module` functions, types and macros.

Additional functionality can be added from a growing collection of packages (<https://juliaobserver.com>).

This chapter is not a replacement of the official Julia documentation. I give merely some examples to illustrate what is possible without being exhaustive. Functions already introduced elsewhere are not included. A complete overview can be found in <https://docs.julialang.org/en/stable/>.

### Measuring Performance

We have seen that some algorithms perform better than other. `fibonnaci` in `Memos` is a lot faster than `fib` in `One More Example`. The `@time` macro allows to quantify the difference:

```
julia> fib(1)
1
julia> fibonacci(1)
1
julia> @time fib(40)
0.567546 seconds (5 allocations: 176 bytes)
102334155
julia> @time fibonacci(40)
0.000012 seconds (8 allocations: 1.547 KiB)
102334155
```

JLCON

`@time` prints the time the function took to execute, the number of allocations and the allocated memory before returning the result. The memoized version is effectively a lot faster but needs more memory.

“*There ain’t no such thing as a free lunch!*”

#### WARNING

A function in Julia is compiled the first time it is executed. So to compare two algorithms, they have to be implemented as a function to get compiled and the first time they are executed, has to be excluded from the performance measure.

### Collections and Data Structures

In `Dictionary Subtraction` I use dictionaries to find the words that appear in a document but not in a word array. The function I wrote takes `d1`, which contains the words from the document as keys, and `d2`, which contains the array of words. It returns a dictionary that contains the keys from `d1` that are not in `d2`.

```
function subtract(d1, d2)
    res = Dict()
    for key in keys(d1)
        if key ∉ keys(d2)
            res[key] = nothing
        end
    end
    res
end
```

In all of these dictionaries, the values are `nothing` because we never use them. As a result, we waste some storage space.

Julia provides another built-in type, called a set, that behaves like a collection of dictionary keys with no values. Adding elements to a set is fast; so is checking membership. And sets provide functions and operators to compute common set operations.

For example, set subtraction is available as a function called `setdiff`. So we can rewrite `subtract` like this:

```
function subtract(d1, d2)
    setdiff(d1, d2)
end
```

The result is a set instead of a dictionary.

Some of the exercises in this book can be done concisely and efficiently with sets. For example, here is a solution to `hasduplicates`, from Exercise 10-7, that uses a dictionary:

```
function hasduplicates(t)
    d = Dict()
    for x in t
        if x ∈ d
            return true
        end
        d[x] = nothing
    end
    false
end
```

When an element appears for the first time, it is added to the dictionary. If the same element appears again, the function returns `true`.

Using sets, we can write the same function like this:

```
function hasduplicates(t)
    length(Set{t}) < length(t)
end
```

An element can only appear in a set once, so if an element in `t` appears more than once, the set will be smaller than `t`. If there are no duplicates, the set will be the same size as `t`.

We can also use sets to do some of the exercises in Case Study: Word Play. For example, here's a version of `usesonly` with a loop:

```
function usesonly(word, available)
    for letter in word
        if letter ∉ available
            return false
        end
    end
    true
end
```

`usesonly` checks whether all letters in `word` are in `available`. We can rewrite it like this:

```
function usesonly(word, available)
    Set(word) ⊆ Set(available)
end
```

The  $\subseteq$  operator checks whether one set is a subset or another, including the possibility that they are equal, which is true if all the letters in `word` appear in `available`.

#### TIP

As an exercise, rewrite `avoids` using sets.

## Mathematics

Complex numbers are also supported in Julia. The global constant `im` is bound to the complex number  $i$ , representing the principal square root of  $-1$ .

We can now verify the Euler's identity:

```
julia> e^(im*pi)+1
0.0 + 1.2246467991473532e-16im
```

The symbol  $e$  (`\euler` TAB) is the base of the natural logarithm.

Let's illustrate the complex nature of trigonometric functions:

$$\cos(x) = \frac{e^{ix} + e^{-ix}}{2}.$$

We can test this formula for different values of  $x$ .

```
julia> x = 0:0.1:2pi
0.0:0.1:6.2
julia> cos.(x) == 0.5*(e.^(im*x)+e.^(-im*x))
true
```

Here, another example of the `.` operator is shown. Julia also allows numeric literals to be juxtaposed with identifiers as coefficients as in `2π`.

## Strings

In Strings and Case Study: Word Play, we did some elementary searches in string objects. Julia can handle however Perl-compatible regular expressions (*regexes*), which eases the task of finding complex patterns in string objects.

The `usesonly` function can be implemented as a regex:

```
function usesonly(word, available)
    r = Regex("[^$(available)]")
    !occursin(r, word)
end
```

JULIA

The regex looks for a character that is not in the `available` string and `occursin` returns `true` if the pattern is found in `word`.

```
julia> usesonly("banana", "abn")
true
julia> usesonly("bananas", "abn")
false
```

JLCON

Regexes can also be constructed as non-standard string literals prefixed with `r`:

```
julia> match(r"[^abn]", "banana")

julia> m = match(r"[^abn]", "bananas")
RegexMatch("s")
```

JLCON

String interpolation is not allowed in this case. The `match` function returns nothing if the pattern (a command) is not found and return a `RegexMatch` object otherwise.

We can extract the following info from a `RegexMatch` object:

- the entire substring matched: `m.match`
- the captured substrings as an array of strings: `m.captures`
- the offset at which the whole match begins: `m.offset`
- the offsets of the captured substrings as a vector: `m.offsets`

```
julia> m.match
"s"
julia> m.offset
7
```

JLCON

Regexes are extremely powerful and the PERL manpage <http://perldoc.perl.org/perlre.html> provides all the details to construct the most exotic searches.

## Arrays

In Arrays I used an array object as a one-dimensional container with an index to address its elements. In Julia however, arrays are multi-dimensional collections.



Let's create a 2-by-3 zero *matrix*:

```
julia> z = zeros{Float64, 2, 3}
2×3 Array{Float64,2}:
 0.0  0.0  0.0
 0.0  0.0  0.0
julia> typeof(z)
Array{Float64,2}
```

JLCON

The type of this matrix is an array holding floating points and having 2 dimensions.

The `size` function returns a tuple with as elements the number of elements in each dimension:

```
julia> size(z)
(2, 3)
```

JLCON

The function `ones` constructs a matrix with unit value elements:

```
julia> s = ones{String, 1, 3}
1×3 Array{String,2}:
 ""  ""  ""
```

JLCON

The string unit element is an empty string.

#### WARNING

`s` is not a one-dimensional array:

```
julia> t = ["", "", ""]
3-element Array{String,1}:
 ""
 ""
 ""
julia> s == t
false
```

JLCON

`s` is a row matrix and `t` is a column matrix.

A matrix can be entered directly using a space to separate elements in a row and a semicolon `;` to separate rows:

```
julia> a = [1 2 3; 4 5 6]
2×3 Array{Int64,2}:
 1  2  3
 4  5  6
```

JLCON

You can use square brackets as usual to address individual elements:

```
julia> z[1,2] = 1
1
julia> z[2,3] = 1
1
julia> z
2×3 Array{Float64,2}:
 0.0  1.0  0.0
 0.0  0.0  1.0
```

Slices can be used for each dimension to select a subgroup of elements:

```
julia> u = z[:,2:end]
2×2 Array{Float64,2}:
 1.0  0.0
 0.0  1.0
```

The `.` operator broadcasts to all dimensions:

```
julia> e.^(im*u)
2×2 Array{Complex{Float64},2}:
 0.540302+0.841471im  1.0+0.0im
 1.0+0.0im  0.540302+0.841471im
```

## Interfaces

Julia specifies some informal interfaces to define behaviors. When you implement these methods for a type, objects of that type can be used in methods build upon these behaviors.

“If it looks like a duck, swims like a duck, and quacks like a duck, then it probably is a duck.

In One More Example I implemented the `fib` function returning the  $n$ th element of the Fibonacci sequence.

Let's make an iterator that returns lazily the Fibonacci sequence:

```
struct Fibonacci{T<:Real} end
Fibonacci(d::DataType) = d<:Real ? Fibonacci{d}() : error("No Real type!")

Base.iterate(::Fibonacci{T}) where {T<:Real} = (zero(T), (one(T), one(T)))
Base.iterate(::Fibonacci{T}, state::Tuple{T, T}) where {T<:Real} = (state[1], (state[2], state[1] + state[2]))
```

I implemented a parametric type with no fields `Fibonacci`, an outer constructor and two methods `iterate`. The first is called to initialize the iterator and returns a tuple consisting of the first value, 0, and a state. The state in this case is a tuple containing the second and the third value, 1 and 1.

The second is called to get the next value of the Fibonacci sequence and returns a tuple having as first element the next value and as second element the state which is a tuple with the two following values.

We can use `Fibonacci` now in a `for` loop:

```
julia> for e in Fibonacci{Int64}
    e > 100 && break
    print(e, " ")
end
0 1 1 2 3 5 8 13 21 34 55 89
```

It looks like magic has happened but the explanation is simple. A `for` loop in Julia

```
for i in iter
    # body
end
```

is translated into:

```
next = iterate(iter)
while next !== nothing
    (i, state) = next
    # body
    next = iterate(iter, state)
end
```

This is a great example how a good defined interface allows an implementation to use all the functions that are aware of the interface.

## Interactive Utilities

We have already met the `InteractiveUtils` module in Subtyping. The `@which` macro is only the tip of the iceberg.

Julia code is transformed by the LLVM library to machinecode in multiple steps. We can directly visualize the output of each stage.

Let's give a simple example:

```
@noinline function squaresum(a::Float64, b::Float64)
    a^2 + b^2
end
```

The `@noinline` macro prohibits the inlining of the function call.

The first step is to look at the lowered code:

```
julia> using InteractiveUtils
```

```
julia> @code_lowered squaresum(3.0, 4.0)
CodeInfo(
  1 —      $(Expr(:meta, :noinline))
  2 |      %2 = (Core.apply_type)(Base.Val, 2)
    |      %3 = (%2)()
    |      %4 = (Base.literal_pow)(:^, a, %3)
    |      %5 = (Core.apply_type)(Base.Val, 2)
    |      %6 = (%5)()
    |      %7 = (Base.literal_pow)(:^, b, %6)
    |      %8 = %4 + %7
    └─      return %8
)
```

The `code_lowered` macro returns an array of an *intermediate representation* of the code that is used by the compiler to generate optimised code.

The next step adds type information:

```
julia> @code_typed squaresum(3.0, 4.0)
CodeInfo(
  2 1 — %1 = (Base.mul_float)(a, a)::Float64
    |   %2 = (Base.mul_float)(b, b)::Float64
    |   %3 = (Base.add_float)(%1, %2)::Float64
    └─      return %3
) => Float64
```

We see that the type of the intermediate results and the return value is correctly inferred.

This representation of the code is transformed in LLVM code:

```
julia> @code_llvm squaresum(3.0, 4.0)

; Function squaresum
; Location: none:2
define double @julia_squaresum_39479(double, double) {
top:
; Function literal_pow; {
; Location: intfuncs.jl:243
; Function *; {
; Location: float.jl:399
    %2 = fmul double %0, %0
    %3 = fmul double %1, %1
;}}
; Function +; {
; Location: float.jl:395
    %4 = fadd double %2, %3
; }
    ret double %4
}
```

And finally the *machine code* is generated:

```
julia> @code_native squaresum(3.0, 4.0)
.section    __TEXT,__text,regular,pure_instructions
; Function squaresum {
; Location: none:2
; Function literal_pow; {
; Location: intfuncs.jl:243
; Function *; {
; Location: none:2
    vmulsd    %xmm0, %xmm0, %xmm0
    vmulsd    %xmm1, %xmm1, %xmm1
;}}
; Function +; {
; Location: float.jl:395
    vaddsd    %xmm1, %xmm0, %xmm0
;}
    retl
    nopl      (%eax)
;}
```

## Debugging

The `Logging` macros provide an alternative to scaffolding with print statements:

```
julia> @warn "Abandon printf debugging, all ye who enter here!"
└ Warning: Abandon printf debugging, all ye who enter here!
└ @ Main REPL[1]:1
```

The debug statement don't have to be removed from the source. For example, in contrast to the `@warn` above

```
julia> @debug "The sum of some values $(sum(rand(100)))"
```

will produce no output by default. In this case `sum(rand(100))` will never be evaluated unless *debug logging* is enabled.

The level of logging can be selected by an environment variable `JULIA_DEBUG`:

```
$ JULIA_DEBUG=all julia -e '@debug "The sum of some values $(sum(rand(100)))"'
└ Debug: The sum of some values 47.116520814555024
└ @ Main none:1
```

Here, I have used `all` to get all debug information, but you can also choose to generate only output for a specific file or module.

## Glossary

### regex

Regular expression, a sequence of characters that define a search pattern.

### matrix

Two-dimensional array.

### intermediate representation

Data structure used internally by a compiler to represent source code.

**machine code**

Language instructions that can be executed directly by a computer's central processing unit.

**debug logging**

Storing debug messages in a log.

## 21. Debugging

When you are debugging, you should distinguish among different kinds of errors in order to track them down more quickly:

- Syntax errors are discovered by the interpreter when it is translating the source code into byte code. They indicate that there is something wrong with the structure of the program. Example: Omitting the `end` keyword at the end of a function block generates the somewhat redundant message `ERROR: LoadError: syntax: incomplete: function requires end`.
- Runtime errors are produced by the interpreter if something goes wrong while the program is running. Most runtime error messages include information about where the error occurred and what functions were executing. Example: An infinite recursion eventually causes the runtime error `ERROR: StackOverflowError`.
- Semantic errors are problems with a program that runs without producing error messages but doesn't do the right thing. Example: An expression may not be evaluated in the order you expect, yielding an incorrect result. The first step in debugging is to figure out which kind of error you are dealing with. Although the following sections are organized by error type, some techniques are applicable in more than one situation.

### Syntax Errors

Syntax errors are usually easy to fix once you figure out what they are. Unfortunately, the error messages are often not helpful. The most common messages are `ERROR: LoadError: syntax: incomplete: premature end of input` and `ERROR: LoadError: syntax: unexpected "="`, neither of which is very informative.

On the other hand, the message does tell you where in the program the problem occurred. Actually, it tells you where Julia noticed a problem, which is not necessarily where the error is. Sometimes the error is prior to the location of the error message, often on the preceding line.

If you are building the program incrementally, you should have a good idea about where the error is. It will be in the last line you added.

If you are copying code from a book, start by comparing your code to the book's code very carefully. Check every character. At the same time, remember that the book might be wrong, so if you see something that looks like a syntax error, it might be.

Here are some ways to avoid the most common syntax errors:

1. Make sure you are not using a Julia keyword for a variable name.
2. Check that you have the `end` keyword at the end of every compound statement, including `for`, `while`, `if`, and `function` blocks.
3. Make sure that any strings in the code have matching quotation marks. Make sure that all quotation marks are “straight quotes”, not “curly quotes”.
4. If you have multiline strings with triple quotes, make sure you have terminated the string properly. An unterminated string may cause an invalid token error at the end of your program, or it may treat the following part of the program as a string until it comes to the next string. In the second case, it might not produce an error message at all!
5. An unclosed opening operator—`(`, `{`, or `[`—makes Julia continue with the next line as part of the current statement. Generally, an error occurs almost immediately in the next line.

6. Check for the classic `=` instead of `==` inside a conditional.
7. If you have non-ASCII characters in the code (including strings and comments), that might cause a problem, although Julia usually handles non-ASCII characters. Be careful if you paste in text from a web page or other source.

If nothing works, move on to the next section...

### I keep making changes and it makes no difference

If the REPL says there is an error and you don't see it, that might be because you and the REPL are not looking at the same code. Check your programming environment to make sure that the program you are editing is the one Julia is trying to run.

If you are not sure, try putting an obvious and deliberate syntax error at the beginning of the program. Now run it again. If the REPL doesn't find the new error, you are not running the new code.

There are a few likely culprits:

- You edited the file and forgot to save the changes before running it again. Some programming environments do this for you, but some don't.
- You changed the name of the file, but you are still running the old name.
- Something in your development environment is configured incorrectly.
- If you are writing a module and using `using`, make sure you don't give your module the same name as one of the standard Julia modules.
- If you are using `using` to import a module, remember that you have to restart the REPL when you modify the code in the module. If you import the module again, it doesn't do anything.

If you get stuck and you can't figure out what is going on, one approach is to start again with a new program like "Hello, World!", and make sure you can get a known program to run. Then gradually add the pieces of the original program to the new one.

## Runtime Errors

Once your program is syntactically correct, Julia can read it and at least start running it. What could possibly go wrong?

### My program does absolutely nothing

This problem is most common when your file consists of functions and classes but does not actually invoke a function to start execution. This may be intentional if you only plan to import this module to supply classes and functions.

If it is not intentional, make sure there is a function call in the program, and make sure the flow of execution reaches it (see "Flow of Execution" below).

### My program hangs

If a program stops and seems to be doing nothing, it is "hanging". Often that means that it is caught in an infinite loop or infinite recursion.

- If there is a particular loop that you suspect is the problem, add a print statement immediately before the loop that says "entering the loop" and another immediately after that says "exiting the loop".

Run the program. If you get the first message and not the second, you've got an infinite loop. Go to Infinite Loop below.



- Most of the time, an infinite recursion will cause the program to run for a while and then produce a `ERROR: LoadError: StackOverflowError` error. If that happens, go to Infinite Recursion below.

If you are not getting this error but you suspect there is a problem with a recursive method or function, you can still use the techniques in Infinite Recursion.

- If neither of those steps works, start testing other loops and other recursive functions and methods.
- If that doesn't work, then it is possible that you don't understand the flow of execution in your program. Go to Flow of Execution below.

## Infinite Loop

If you think you have an infinite loop and you think you know what loop is causing the problem, add a print statement at the end of the loop that prints the values of the variables in the condition and the value of the condition.

For example:

```
while x > 0 && y < 0
    # do something to x
    # do something to y
    println("x: ", x)
    println("y: ", y)
    println("condition: ", (x > 0 && y < 0))
end
```

JULIA

Now when you run the program, you will see three lines of output for each time through the loop. The last time through the loop, the condition should be `false`. If the loop keeps going, you will be able to see the values of `x` and `y`, and you might figure out why they are not being updated correctly.

## Infinite Recursion

Most of the time, infinite recursion causes the program to run for a while and then produce a `ERROR: LoadError: StackOverflowError` error.

If you suspect that a function is causing an infinite recursion, make sure that there is a base case. There should be some condition that causes the function to return without making a recursive invocation. If not, you need to rethink the algorithm and identify a base case.

If there is a base case but the program doesn't seem to be reaching it, add a print statement at the beginning of the function that prints the parameters. Now when you run the program, you will see a few lines of output every time the function is invoked, and you will see the parameter values. If the parameters are not moving toward the base case, you will get some ideas about why not.

## Flow of Execution

If you are not sure how the flow of execution is moving through your program, add print statements to the beginning of each function with a message like "entering function foo", where foo is the name of the function.

Now when you run the program, it will print a trace of each function as it is invoked.

## When I run the program I get an exception

If something goes wrong during runtime, Julia prints a message that includes the name of the exception, the line of the program where the problem occurred, and a stacktrace.

The `stacktrace` identifies the function that is currently running, and then the function that called it, and then the function that called that, and so on. In other words, it traces the sequence of function calls that got you to where you are, including the line number in your file where each call occurred.

The first step is to examine the place in the program where the error occurred and see if you can figure out what happened. These are some of the most common runtime errors:

### **ArgumentError**

The parameters to a function call do not match a valid signature.

### **BoundsError**

An indexing operation into an array tried to access an out-of-bounds element.

### **DivideError**

Integer division was attempted with a denominator value of 0.

### **EOFError**

No more data was available to read from a file or stream.

### **KeyError**

An indexing operation into an `AbstractDict` (`Dict`) or `Set` like object tried to access or delete a non-existent element.

### **MethodError**

A method with the required type signature does not exist in the given generic function. Alternatively, there is no unique most-specific method.

### **OutOfMemoryError**

An operation allocated too much memory for either the system or the garbage collector to handle properly.

### **OverflowError**

The result of an expression is too large for the specified type and will cause a wraparound.

### **StackOverflowError**

The function call grew beyond the size of the call stack. This usually happens when a call recurses infinitely.

### **StringIndexError**

An error occurred when trying to access a string at an index that is not valid.

### **SystemError**

A system call failed with an error code.

### **TypeError**

A type assertion failure, or calling an intrinsic function with an incorrect argument type.

### **UndefVarError**

A symbol in the current scope is not defined.

## I added so many print statements I get inundated with output

One of the problems with using print statements for debugging is that you can end up buried in output. There are two ways to proceed: simplify the output or simplify the program.

To simplify the output, you can remove or comment out print statements that aren't helping, or combine them, or format the output so it is easier to understand.

To simplify the program, there are several things you can do. First, scale down the problem the program is working on. For example, if you are searching a list, search a small list. If the program takes input from the user, give it the simplest input that causes the problem.

Second, clean up the program. Remove dead code and reorganize the program to make it as easy to read as possible. For example, if you suspect that the problem is in a deeply nested part of the program, try rewriting that part with simpler structure. If you suspect a large function, try splitting it into smaller functions and testing them separately.

Often the process of finding the minimal test case leads you to the bug. If you find that a program works in one situation but not in another, that gives you a clue about what is going on.

Similarly, rewriting a piece of code can help you find subtle bugs. If you make a change that you think shouldn't affect the program, and it does, that can tip you off.

## Semantic Errors

In some ways, semantic errors are the hardest to debug, because the interpreter provides no information about what is wrong. Only you know what the program is supposed to do.

The first step is to make a connection between the program text and the behavior you are seeing. You need a hypothesis about what the program is actually doing. One of the things that makes that hard is that computers run so fast.

You will often wish that you could slow the program down to human speed. Inserting a few well-placed print statements is often short compared to setting up a debugger, inserting and removing breakpoints, and “stepping” the program to where the error is occurring.

## My program doesn't work

You should ask yourself these questions:

- Is there something the program was supposed to do but which doesn't seem to be happening? Find the section of the code that performs that function and make sure it is executing when you think it should.
- Is something happening that shouldn't? Find code in your program that performs that function and see if it is executing when it shouldn't.
- Is a section of code producing an effect that is not what you expected? Make sure that you understand the code in question, especially if it involves functions or methods in other Julia modules. Read the documentation for the functions you call. Try them out by writing simple test cases and checking the results.

In order to program, you need a mental model of how programs work. If you write a program that doesn't do what you expect, often the problem is not in the program; it's in your mental model.

The best way to correct your mental model is to break the program into its components (usually the functions and methods) and test each component independently. Once you find the discrepancy between your model and reality, you can solve the problem.

Of course, you should be building and testing components as you develop the program. If you encounter a problem, there should be only a small amount of new code that is not known to be correct.

### I've got a big hairy expression and it doesn't do what I expect

Writing complex expressions is fine as long as they are readable, but they can be hard to debug. It is often a good idea to break a complex expression into a series of assignments to temporary variables.

For example:

```
addcard(game.hands[i], popcard(game.hands[findneighbor(game, i)]))
```

JULIA

This can be rewritten as:

```
neighbor = findneighbor(game, i)
pickedcard = popcard(game.hands[neighbor])
addcard(game.hands[i], pickedcard)
```

JULIA

The explicit version is easier to read because the variable names provide additional documentation, and it is easier to debug because you can check the types of the intermediate variables and display their values.

Another problem that can occur with big expressions is that the order of evaluation may not be what you expect. For example, if you are translating the expression  $\frac{x}{2\pi}$  into Julia, you might write:

```
y = x / 2 * π
```

JULIA

That is not correct because multiplication and division have the same precedence and are evaluated from left to right. So this expression computes  $\frac{x\pi}{2}$ .

A good way to debug expressions is to add parentheses to make the order of evaluation explicit:

```
y = x / (2 * π)
```

JULIA

Whenever you are not sure of the order of evaluation, use parentheses. Not only will the program be correct (in the sense of doing what you intended), it will also be more readable for other people who haven't memorized the order of operations.

### I've got a function that doesn't return what I expect

If you have a return statement with a complex expression, you don't have a chance to print the result before returning. Again, you can use a temporary variable. For example, instead of:

```
return removematches(game.hands[i])
```

JULIA

you could write:

```
count = removematches(game.hands[i])  
return count
```

JULIA

Now you have the opportunity to display the value of `count` before returning.

### I'm really, really stuck and I need help

First, try getting away from the computer for a few minutes. Computers emit waves that affect the brain, causing these symptoms:

- Frustration and rage.
- Superstitious beliefs (“the computer hates me”) and magical thinking (“the program only works when I wear my hat backward”).
- Random walk programming (the attempt to program by writing every possible program and choosing the one that does the right thing).

If you find yourself suffering from any of these symptoms, get up and go for a walk. When you are calm, think about the program. What is it doing? What are some possible causes of that behavior? When was the last time you had a working program, and what did you do next?

Sometimes it just takes time to find a bug. I often find bugs when I am away from the computer and let my mind wander. Some of the best places to find bugs are trains, showers, and in bed, just before you fall asleep.

### No, I really need help

It happens. Even the best programmers occasionally get stuck. Sometimes you work on a program so long that you can't see the error. You need a fresh pair of eyes.

Before you bring someone else in, make sure you are prepared. Your program should be as simple as possible, and you should be working on the smallest input that causes the error. You should have print statements in the appropriate places (and the output they produce should be comprehensible). You should understand the problem well enough to describe it concisely.

When you bring someone in to help, be sure to give them the information they need:

- If there is an error message, what is it and what part of the program does it indicate?
- What was the last thing you did before this error occurred? What were the last lines of code that you wrote, or what is the new test case that fails?
- What have you tried so far, and what have you learned?

When you find the bug, take a second to think about what you could have done to find it faster. Next time you see something similar, you will be able to find the bug more quickly.

Remember, the goal is not just to make the program work. The goal is to learn how to make the program work.

# Appendix A: Unicode Input

The following table lists Unicode characters that can be entered via tab completion of LaTeX-like abbreviations in the Julia REPL (and in various other editing environments).

Character	Tab completion sequence	ASCII representation
<sup>2</sup>	<code>\^2</code>	
<sub>1</sub>	<code>\_1</code>	
<sub>2</sub>	<code>\_2</code>	
?	<code>\:apple:</code>	
?	<code>\:pear:</code>	
?	<code>\:banana:</code>	
?	<code>\:camel:</code>	
?	<code>\:turtle:</code>	
≡	<code>\equiv</code>	===
<i>e</i>	<code>\euler</code>	
∈	<code>\in</code>	in
≥	<code>\ge</code>	>=
≤	<code>\le</code>	<=
≠	<code>\ne</code>	!=
∉	<code>\notin</code>	
π	<code>\pi</code>	pi
⊆	<code>\subseteq</code>	
ε	<code>\varepsilon</code>	

# Index

Last updated 2018-09-11 21:15:47 CEST